



ARAB REPUBLIC OF EGYPT  
Ministry of Education and  
Technical Education  
Central Administration of Book Affairs

# Mathematics

Student Book



First form secondary

First term



**Mathematics has** Practical applications in various fields including road construction, bridges and urban planning and preparing their maps which depend on parallel lines and their transversals according to the proportion between the real length and the drawing length.

*Elsalam bridge connecting between the two shores of the Suez canal*

2019 - 2020

غير مصرح بتداول هذا الكتاب خارج وزارة التربية والتعليم والتعليم الفني



## **Authors**

**Mr. Omar Fouad Gaballa**

**Prof.Dr. Afaf Abo-ElFoutoh Saleh**      **Prof.Dr. Nabil Tawfik Eldhabai**

**Dr. Essam Wasfy Roupaiel**      **Mr. Serafiem Elias Skander**

**Mr. Kamal yones kabsha**

**Issued: 2013**

**D.N: 2013 / 14851**

**ISPN: 978 - 977 - 706 - 005 - 9**





# INTRODUCTION

## بسم الله الرحمن الرحيم

we are pleased we offer this book to make it clear philosophy that has been in light construction of educational material and can be summarized as follows:

1. To emphasise that the main purpose of these books is to help the learner to solve problems and make decisions in their daily lives, and help them to participate in society.
2. Emphasis on the principle of continuity of life-long learning through work that students gain a systematic scientific thinking, and practice learning mixed with fun and suspense, relying on the development of problem- solving skills and develop the skills of the conclusion and reasoning, and the use of methods of self-learning, active learning and collaborative learning team spirit, and discussion and dialogue, and accept the opinions of others, and objectivity in sentencing, in addition to some definition of national activities and accomplishments.
3. Provide a comprehensive coherent visions of the relationship between science, technology and society (STS) reflect the role scientific progress in the development of the local community, in addition to focusing on the practice of conscious students to act effectively about to use technological instruments.
4. The development of positive attitudes towards the study of mathematics and aspect of its scientists.
5. To provide students with a comprehensive culture to use the available environmental resource.
6. Rely on the fundamentals of knowledge and develop methods of thinking, the development of scientific skills and stay away of the details and educational memorization, that's concern directed to bring concepts and general principles and research methods, problem solving and methods of thinking about the fundamental distinction mathematics from the others.

### **We have been especially cautions in this book the following:**

- ★ The book has been divided into integrated and coherent units, for each one there is an introduction shows its aims, lessons, a short, and key terms, it has been divided into lessons explain the goal of study under the title "you will learn", each lesson starts with the main idea to the content of the lesson .It takes onto consideration, the presentation to the scientific article from easy to difficult and includes a set of activities that integrated with other subjects and to suit different abilities of students and take into consideration the individual differences between them and emphasizes the collaborative work, and integrated with the subject.
- ★ Every lesson has been presented examples from easy to difficult, it include variety of levels of thinking with drills on it under the title of " try to solve" and the lesson ends with a title of "check your understanding"
- ★ Each unit ends with a summary of the unit deals with concepts and instructions contained in the unit.

Eventually, we hope getting the right track for the benefits of our students as well as for our dearest Egypt hopping bright future to our dearest students. And the God of the intent behind, with leads to either way.

## First term Map Book

Unit	Lesson included in the unit	Concepts included	Mental operations and skills involved	Interdependence and interference with other sciences and scientific life
Algebra, relations and functions	1 - 1: Solving Quadratic Equations in One Variable	equation - relation - function - factor	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>➤ Critical thinking p.6</li> <li>➤ Problem solving p.6</li> <li>➤ Algebraic thinking (during procedure)</li> </ul>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>➤ physics p.6</li> <li>➤ sports p.6</li> </ul>
	1 - 2: Complex Numbers	imaginary number - complex number	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>➤ Critical thinking P. 9, 11, 12</li> <li>➤ Algebraic thinking (during procedure)</li> </ul>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>➤ technology p.7</li> <li>➤ Electricity p.12</li> </ul>
	1 - 3: Determining the Types of the two Roots of a Quadratic Equation	root - discriminant equation	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>➤ Critical thinking p.15</li> <li>➤ Problem solving p.15</li> <li>➤ Algebraic thinking (during procedure)</li> </ul>	➤ Health p.15
	1 - 4: The Relation Between the Two Roots of the Second Degree Equation and the Coefficients of its Terms	sum of the two roots product of two roots	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>➤ Verbal thinking p.16</li> <li>➤ Critical thinking p.19</li> <li>➤ Algebraic thinking (during procedure)</li> </ul>	
	1 - 5: Sign of a Function	Sign of function - Positive function - Negative function	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>➤ Logical thinking p.20, 21, 22</li> <li>➤ Algebraic thinking (during procedure)</li> </ul>	
	1 - 6: Quadratic Inequalities in one unknown	inequality	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>➤ Logical thinking p.26</li> <li>➤ Critical thinking p.27</li> <li>➤ Algebraic thinking (during procedure)</li> </ul>	
Similarity	1 - 2: Similarity of Polygons	Similarity - similar polygons - similar triangles - corresponding sides - congruent angles	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>➤ Logical thinking</li> <li>➤ Constructive thinking</li> <li>➤ Geometric thinking (during procedure)</li> </ul>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>➤ Art p.41</li> <li>➤ life applications</li> </ul>
	2 - 2: Similarity of Triangles	Similarity - similar triangles - axiom	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>➤ Logical thinking</li> <li>➤ Constructive thinking</li> <li>➤ Geometric thinking</li> </ul>	➤ Physics p.47
	3 - 2: The Relation Between the Area of two Similar Polygons	Perimeter - area - area of polygon - corresponding - sides	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>➤ Logical thinking</li> <li>➤ Constructive thinking</li> <li>➤ Geometric thinking (During procedure)</li> </ul>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>➤ Geography p.55</li> <li>➤ Agriculture p.58</li> </ul>
	4 - 2: Applications of Similarity in the circle	Chord - secant - tangent - diameter - outer common tangent - inner common tangent	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>➤ Logical thinking</li> <li>➤ Constructive thinking</li> <li>➤ Geometric thinking (During procedure)</li> </ul>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>➤ Geology p.64</li> <li>➤ Industry p.65</li> <li>➤ Road engineering p.65</li> <li>➤ Space p.65</li> </ul>

Unit	Lesson included in the unit	Concepts included	Mental operations and skills involved	Interdependence and interference with other sciences and scientific life
The triangle proportionality theorems	3 - 1: Parallel Lines and Proportional Parts	parallel - bisector - median - secant	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>logical thinking</li> <li>constructive thinking</li> <li>geometric thinking</li> <li>mathematical modeling p.76</li> <li>problem solving p.80</li> <li>critical thinking p.80</li> <li>planned proof (serial proof) p.76</li> </ul>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Pollution control P.77</li> <li>Constructions P.80</li> <li>Industry P.80</li> </ul>
	3 - 2: Two Angle Bisectors and Proportional Parts	bisector - inner bisector - external bisector - perpendicular	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>logical thinking</li> <li>constructive thinking</li> <li>geometric thinking (During procedure)</li> <li>critical thinking p.83</li> <li>Problem solving p.86</li> </ul>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Art p.41</li> <li>life applications p.41</li> </ul>
	3 - 3: Applications of Proportionality in the Circle	Power- point - circle - chord - tangent - secant - diameter - concentric circles - outer common tangent - inner common tangent	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>logical thinking</li> <li>constructive thinking</li> <li>geometric thinking (During procedure)</li> <li>Problem solving p.93</li> </ul>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Satellites p.92</li> </ul>
Trigonometry	4 - 1: Directed Angle.	degree measure - directed angle - standard position - positive measure - negative measure - equivalent angle	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>critical thinking p.99</li> <li>verbal thinking p.99</li> </ul>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Sports p.102</li> </ul>
	4 - 2: Systems of Measuring Angle (degree measure radian measure)	degree measure - radian measure	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Critical thinking p.113</li> </ul>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Technology p.106</li> <li>space p.107</li> <li>sports p.107</li> <li>Industry p.107</li> </ul>
	4 - 3: Trigonometric Functions.	trigonometric function - sine - cosine - tangent - secant - cosecant - cotangent	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Critical thinking p.113</li> </ul>	
	4 - 4: Related Angles	related angles	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>critical thinking p.115</li> </ul>	
	4 - 5: Graphing Trigonometric Functions	sine function - cosine function - maximum value - minimum value		<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Physics P.122</li> </ul>
	4 - 6: Finding the Measure of an Angle in terms of the value of one of its trigonometric ratios	trigonometric function	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Critical thinking p.124</li> </ul>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>technology p.123</li> <li>Sports p.124</li> <li>Cars p.124</li> </ul>



# Contents

## Unit One

### Algebra, relations and functions

1 - 1	Solving Quadratic Equations in One Variable	4
1 - 2	Introduction in Complex Numbers	9
1 - 3	Determining the Types of the two Roots of a Quadratic Equation.	15
1 - 4	The Relation Between the Two Roots of the Second Degree Equation and the Coefficients of its Terms.	19
1 - 5	Sign of a Function.	26
1 - 6	Quadratic Inequalities.	33
	Unit Summary	37

## Unit Two

### Similarity

2 - 1	Similarity of Polygons	42
2 - 2	Similarity of Triangles.	48
2 - 3	The Relation Between the Area of two Similar Polygons.	61
2 - 4	Applications of Similarity in the circle.	71
	Unit Summary	79



### Unit Three

## The triangle proportionality theorems

3 - 1	Parallel Lines and Proportional Parts	82
3 - 2	Angle of a triangle Bisectors and Proportional Parts	94
3 - 3	Applications of Proportionality in the Circle	103
	Unit Summary	112

### Unit Four

## Trigonometry

4 - 1	Directed Angle.	116
4 - 2	Systems of Measuring Angle. (degree - radian)	124
4 - 3	Trigonometric Functions.	131
4 - 4	Related Angles	139
4 - 5	Graphing Trigonometric Functions	149
4 - 6	Finding the Measure of an Angle in terms of the value of one of its trigonometric ratios	153
	Unit Summary	157
	General Tests	159



## Algebra

# Unit 1

## Algebra, relations and functions

### Unit objectives

**By the end of the unit, the student should be able to:**

- ④ Solve the quadratic equation in one variable algebraically and graphically.
- ④ Find the sum and the product of the two roots of the quadratic equation in one variable .
- ④ Find some of the coefficients of terms of the quadratic equation in terms of one of the two roots or both of them.
- ④ Identify the discriminant of the quadratic equation in one variable.
- ④ Investigate the type of the two roots of the quadratic equation in one variable in terms of the coefficients of its terms.
- ④ Form the quadratic equation in one variable in terms of another quadratic equation in one variable.
- ④ Investigate the sign of a function .
- ④ Identify the introduction of the complex numbers (Definition of the complex number, powers of  $i$ , writing the complex number in the algebraic form, equality of two complex numbers)
- ④ Solve quadratic inequalities in one variable.

### Key - Terms

- |                         |                                |                      |
|-------------------------|--------------------------------|----------------------|
| ④ Equation              | ④ Discriminant of the Equation | ④ Imaginary Number   |
| ④ Root of the Equation  | ④ Sign of a function           | ④ Powers of a Number |
| ④ Coefficient of a Term | ④ Complex Number               | ④ Inequality         |





Status of Muhamed ibn Musa Elkhwarezmi

## Lesson of the unit

- Lesson (1 - 1): Solving Quadratic Equations in One Variable.
- Lesson (1 - 2): An Introduction in Complex Numbers.
- Lesson (1 - 3): Determining the Types of the two Roots of a Quadratic Equation.
- Lesson (1 - 4): The Relation Between the Two Roots of the Second Degree Equation and the Coefficients of its Terms.
- Lesson (1 - 5): Sign of a Function.
- Lesson (1 - 6): Quadratic Inequalities in one unknown

## Materials

Scientific Calculator - Squared paper -  
Computer - Graphic Program- Electronic sites  
such as: [www.phschool.com](http://www.phschool.com)

## Brief History

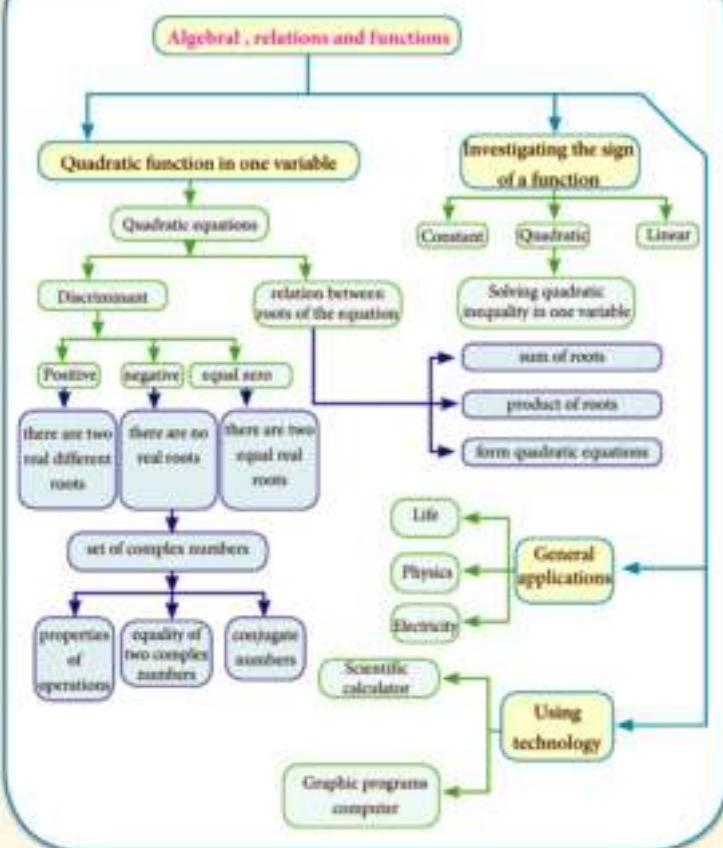
Algebra is an Arabic word used by Muhamed ibn Musa Elkhwarezmi ( 9th century AD, in the era of the Abbasy kalipha Elmamoon) . In his book (Algebra and AlMokabla) which contains the genuine ways to solve equation, So Elkhwarezmi is the founder of algebra after it was a part of the calculation.

The book has been translated into European languages titled " Algebra" and taken from it the word "Algebra" And the root which we symbolized it currently by "x" ( a reference to solve a quadratic equation ). Elkhwarezmi put Geometric solutions to the quadratic equation which match with the way of completing the square. Many Arabic scientists worked with solving equations, and the best known is Omar Elkayyam who concerned with solving third degree equations.

It is worth mentioning that, it appeared in Ahmose papyrus (1860 BC), some of the problem that solutions refer that Egyptians at that time have found away to find the sum of the terms of an arithmetic and geometric sequences.

Now , Algebra is a large degree of sophistication and abstraction, it was dealing with numbers but now it has to deal with new mathematical entities such as : sets , matrices, vectors and so on. It is hoped you - our students - to restore the scientific glory in Golden eras through Egypt pharaonic and Islamic eras, Which our scientists Carry the banner of progress and flares knowledge to the world sides.

## Chart of the unit



# 1 - 1

## Solving Quadratic Equations in One Variable

### You will Learn

- Concept of the algebraic equation in one variable.
- Distinguish between equations, relations and functions.
- Solving quadratic equation in one variable algebraically and graphically.

### Key - Terms

- Equation
- Relation
- Function
- Factor
- Coefficient

### Materials

- Scientific calculator
- Graphic paper



You have previously studied algebraic equations in one variable. In this lesson, you will study the algebraic quadratic equations in one variable. Now we will show you the previous study of algebraic equations in one variable.

- 1- The equation :  $ax + b = 0$  where  $a \neq 0$  is called a **first degree equation in one variable which is  $x$**  (because the greatest power of the variable  $x$  is 1)
- 2- The equation:  $ax^2 + bx + c = 0$  where  $a \neq 0$  is called a **second degree equation in one variable which is  $x$**  (because the greatest power of the variable  $x$  is 2)

**Thus** the equation :  $2x^3 - 3x^2 + 5 = 0$  is called a third degree equation. (because the greatest power of the variable  $x$  is 3).

### Equations, relations and functions

You have previously studied to solve quadratic equation algebraically by two methods as follows:

**first:** By factorizing the expression  $ax^2 + bx + c$  where  $a, b$ , and  $c \in \mathbb{R}$ ,  $a \neq 0$  (If it is possible in  $\mathbb{Z}$ ).

**Second:** By the general formula, the two roots of the equation  $ax^2 + bx + c = 0$  are:  $x = \frac{-b \pm \sqrt{b^2 - 4ac}}{2a}$  where  $a$  is the coefficient of  $x^2$ ,  $b$  is the coefficient of  $x$  and  $c$  is the absolute term.

Now , you will study how to solve the quadratic equation graphically.



### Solving quadratic equation graphically

#### Example

- 1) Solve the equation:  $x^2 + x - 6 = 0$  graphically, then check your answer.



#### Solution

To solve the equation  $x^2 + x - 6 = 0$  graphically, we do the following:

- ★ Graph the function  $f$  where  $f(x) = x^2 + x - 6$

#### Remember

The trinomial  $ax^2 + bx + c$  where  $a, b, c, \in \mathbb{Z}$  Can be factorized as a product of two binomials of integer coefficients if and only if the expression  $b^2 - 4ac$  is a perfect square



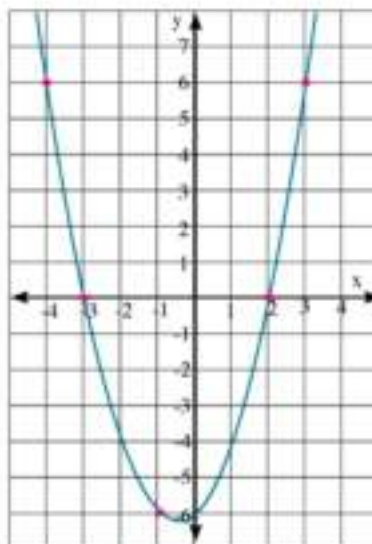
- ★ Determine the set of  $x$  - coordinates of the intersecting points of the parabola and the  $x$ -axis, then it is the solution set of the equation.

To graph the function  $f(x) = y, y = x^2 + x - 6$

From the following table for some values of  $x$ , then find the corresponding values of  $y$  as follows:

$x$	-4	-3	-2	-1	0	1	2	3
$y$	6	0	-4	-6	-6	-4	0	6

- ★ Plot the points on the perpendicular coordinate plane, join them with a smooth curve as in the opposite figure. From the graph, we get the  $x$ -coordinates of the intersecting points of the parabola with the  $x$ -axis which are  $x = -3$  and  $x = 2$ . Thus the solution set of the equation  $x^2 + x - 6 = 0$  is  $\{-3, 2\}$ .



You can use the algebraic solution to compare it with the graphic solution as follows:

the equation:  $x^2 + x - 6 = 0$

Factorize the trinomial :  $(x + 3)(x - 2) = 0$

either  $x + 3 = 0$  or  $x - 2 = 0$

i.e  $x = -3$  or  $x = 2$ . The solution set is  $\{-3, 2\}$

#### Remember

If  $a$  and  $b$  are real numbers,  
and  $a \times b = 0$   
then:  $a = 0$  or  $b = 0$

#### Check:

when  $x = -3$ : L.H.S =  $(-3)^2 + (-3) - 6$   
 $= 9 - 3 - 6 = 0$  (R.H.S)

$x = -3$  satisfies the equation.

when  $x = 2$ : L.H.S =  $(2)^2 + (2) - 6$   
 $= 4 + 2 - 6 = 0$  (R.H.S)

$x = 2$  Satisfies the equation.

#### Notice that:

1- In the previous graphic relation  $y = x^2 + x - 6$

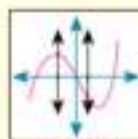
- The relation represents a function because any vertical line intersects the curve at one point.
- The domain is the set of real numbers.
- The range is  $[-6\frac{1}{4}, \infty[$

2- To express the function, use the symbol  $f(x)$  in stead of  $y$ , and is read as function of  $x$ .

#### Critical thinking:

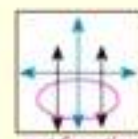
- 1- Is every function a relation? explain with examples.
- 2- Is it possible to represent the relations and functions by equations? explain.

#### Vertical line test



function

the vertical line intersects the curve at one point



not function

the vertical line intersects the curve at two or more points

### Try to solve

- 1 Represent the relation  $y = x^2 - 4$  graphically, then find from the graph the solution set of the equation  $x^2 - 4 = 0$  and if  $y = f(x)$ , then show that  $f$  is a function, and determine its domain and its range [Discuss with your teacher].

### Example

- 2 **Physics:** A missile is launched vertically upwards with speed  $u = 24.5$  m/sec. Calculate the time elapsed  $t$  in seconds such that the missile reaches a height  $s$  metres, where  $s = 19.6$ m, given that the relation between  $S$  and  $t$  is as follows:  $S = ut - 4.9 t^2$ .

### Solution

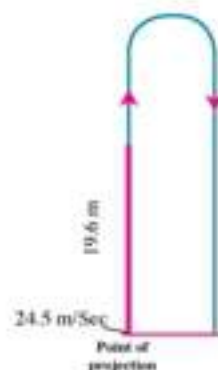
By substituting :  $s = 19.6$  m,  $u = 24.5$  m/sec in the relation  $s = ut - 4.9 t^2$

$$\therefore 19.6 = 24.5 t - 4.9 t^2 \quad \text{Divide both sides by 4.9}$$

$$\therefore 4 = 5t - t^2 \quad \text{simplify}$$

$$\therefore t^2 - 5t + 4 = 0 \quad \text{factorize the trinomial .}$$

$$\therefore (t - 1)(t - 4) = 0 \quad \text{i.e: } t = 1 \text{ sec or } t = 4 \text{ sec.}$$



**Explanation of getting of two answers:** The missile reaches a height of 19.6m after 1 second, then it continues moving up until to reach the maximum height, then it returns to the same height after 4 seconds from the moment of projection .

### Try to solve

- 2 **Sports:** In one of the olympic games, a racer jumped from a platform 9.8 metres high above water surface. If the height of the racer above water surface is "S" metres after time "t" seconds and determined by the relation:  $S = -4.9t^2 + 2.45t + 9.8$  , then find to the nearest hundredth, when the racer reaches the water surface.



### Activity

Please visit the following links.



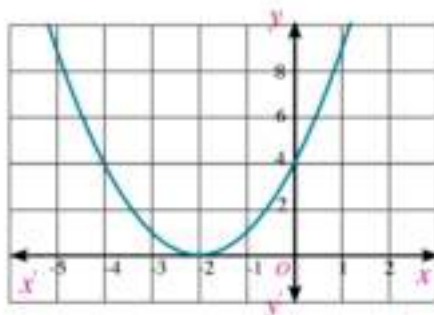
### Exercises (1 - 1)



### First: Multiple choice:

- 1 The equation:  $(x - 1)(x + 2) = 0$  is of: \_\_\_\_\_ degree  
☐ A First      ☐ B second      ☐ C third      ☐ D Fourth

- 2 The solution set of the equation  $x^2 = x$  in  $\mathbb{R}$  is : \_\_\_\_\_  
 A  $\{0\}$                       B  $\{1\}$                       C  $\{-1, 1\}$                       D  $\{0, 1\}$
- 3 The solution set of the equation  $x^2 + 3 = 0$  in  $\mathbb{R}$  is: \_\_\_\_\_  
 A  $\{-3\}$                       B  $\{-\sqrt{3}\}$   
 C  $\{\sqrt{3}\}$                       D  $\phi$
- 4 The solution set of the equation  $x^2 - 2x = -1$  in  $\mathbb{R}$  is: \_\_\_\_\_  
 A  $\{-1\}$                       B  $\phi$   
 C  $\{-1, 1\}$                       D  $\{1\}$
- 5 The figure opposite represents the graph of the curve of the quadratic function  $f$ . The solution set of the equation  $f(x) = 0$  is:  
 A  $\{-2\}$                       B  $\{4\}$   
 C  $\phi$                       D  $\{-2, 4\}$



**Second: Answer the following questions:**

- 6 Find the solution set of each of the following equations in  $\mathbb{R}$ :  
 A  $x^2 - 1 = 0$                       B  $x^2 + 3x = 0$                       C  $(x - 4)^2 = 0$   
 D  $x^2 - 6x + 9 = 0$                       E  $x^2 + 9 = 0$                       F  $x(x + 1)(x - 1) = 0$
- 7 Each of the following graphs illustrates a quadratic function. Find the solution set of the equation  $f(x) = 0$  in each figure .
- A

B

C
- 8 Find the solution set of each of the following equations in  $\mathbb{R}$  then, and verify the result graphically:
- A  $x^2 = 3x + 40$

C  $6x^2 = 6 - 5x$

E  $x^2 + 2x = 12$

B  $2x^2 = 3 - 5x$

D  $(x - 3)^2 = 5$

F  $\frac{1}{2}x^2 - \frac{3}{5}x = 1$



- 9 Solve the following equations in  $\mathbb{R}$  using the general formula then approximate the result to the nearest tenth.

A  $3x^2 - 65 = 0$

B  $x^2 - 6x + 7 = 0$

C  $x^2 + 6x + 8 = 0$

D  $2x^2 + 3x - 4 = 0$

E  $5x^2 - 3x - 1 = 0$

F  $3x^2 - 6x - 4 = 0$

- 10 **Numbers:** If the sum of the whole consecutive numbers ( $1 + 2 + 3 + \dots + n$ ) is given by the relation  $S = \frac{n}{2}(1+n)$ , how many whole consecutive numbers starting from the number 1 and their sum equals:

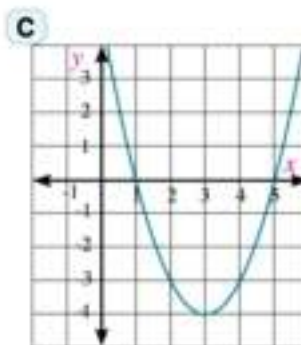
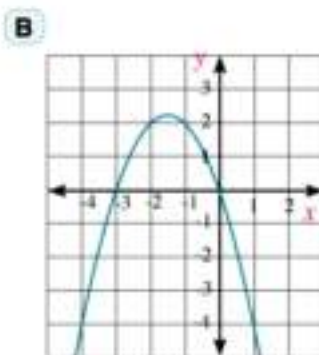
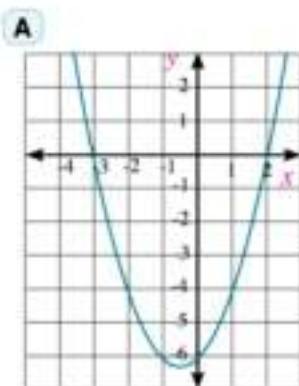
A 78

B 171

C 253

D 465

- 11 Each of the following figure shows the graph of a quadratic function in one variable. Find the rule of each function.



- 12 **Discover the error:** Find the solution set of the equation  $(x-3)^2 = (x-3)$ .

Ziad's answer

$$\therefore (x-3)^2 = (x-3)$$

Divide both sides by  $(x-3)$  where  $x \neq 3$

$$\therefore x-3 = 1 \text{ simplify}$$

$$\therefore x = 4$$

the solution set =  $\{4\}$

Karim's answer

$$\therefore (x-3)^2 = (x-3)$$

$$\therefore (x-3)^2 - (x-3) = 0$$

$$\therefore (x-3)[(x-3) - 1] = 0$$

simplify:  $x-3=0$  af  $x-4=0$

the solution set =  $\{3, 4\}$

Which solution is correct? why ?

- 13 **Critical thinking:** A ball is thrown vertically upwards with a speed "u" of 29.4 metres/second. Calculate the time "t" that the ball takes to reach a height "S" metres where  $S = 39.2\text{m}$  given that the relation between S and t is  $S = ut - 4.9 t^2$ .



# An Introduction in Complex Numbers

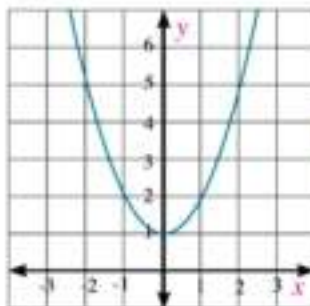
## 1 - 2



We have studied different systems of numbers which are : set of natural numbers  $N$ , set of integers  $Z$ , set of rational numbers  $Q$ , and set of irrational numbers  $Q'$ , finally the set of real numbers  $R$ . Any set of numbers is an extension to the set of numbers preceding it to solve new equations which have no solution in the preceding system, Look at the equation:

$x^2 = -1$ , it is impossible to solve it in  $R$ , because there is no real number whose square equals "-1" satisfies the equation, thus we need to study a new set of numbers which is called the set of complex numbers.

**The figure opposite shows:** the graph of the function  $y = x^2 + 1$ , from the graph we notice that the parabola does not intersect the  $x$ -axis. there is no real solution of the equation  $x^2 + 1 = 0$  in  $R$  this is necessary to think about a new set of numbers to solve this kind of equations.



### You will Learn

- Concept of the imaginary number,
- Integer power of  $i$ ,
- Concept of the complex number,
- Equality of two complex numbers,
- Operations on the complex numbers,

### Key - Terms

- Imaginary Number
- Complex Number



### Imaginary numbers

The imaginary number " $i$ " is defined as the number whose square equals  $(-1)$  i.e.  $i^2 = -1$  and  $\sqrt{-n} = \sqrt{-1 \times n} = \sqrt{-1} i = \sqrt{n} i$ , when  $n \in R^+$

and the numbers in the form  $2i, -5i, \sqrt{3} i$  are called the imaginary numbers

So, we write  $\sqrt{-3} = \sqrt{3} i$

$\sqrt{-5} = \sqrt{5} i$ , ..... and so on

### Materials

- Scientific calculator

**Critical thinking:** If  $a$ , and  $b$  are two negative real numbers. Is it possible that  $\sqrt{a} \sqrt{b} = \sqrt{ab}$ ? explain your answer by giving a numerical example.

## Integer powers of $i$

The number  $i$  satisfies the laws of indices which we studied before, it is possible to express the different powers of the number  $i$  as follows:

$$\begin{aligned} i^1 &= i & i^2 &= -1 & i^3 &= i^2 \cdot i = -i \\ i^4 &= i^2 \times i^2 = -1 \times -1 = 1 & i^5 &= i^4 \times i = 1 \times i = i \end{aligned}$$

**In general:**  $i^{4n} = 1$ ,  $i^{4n+1} = i$ ,  $i^{4n+2} = -1$ ,  $i^{4n+3} = -i$  where  $n \in \mathbb{Z}$

### Example

**14** Find each of the following in the simplest form:

- A**  $i^{30}$       **B**  $i^{43}$       **C**  $i^{-61}$       **D**  $i^{4n+19}$

### Solution

- A**  $i^{30} = (i^4)^7 \times i^2 = 1 \times -1 = -1$       **B**  $i^{43} = (i^4)^{10} \times i^3 = 1 \times -i = -i$   
**C**  $i^{-61} = (i^4)^{-15} \times i^3 = 1 \times i^3 = -i$       **D**  $i^{4n+19} = i^{4n} \times i^{19} = 1 \times (i^4)^4 \times i^3 = 1 \times i^3 = -i$

### Try to solve

**1** Find each of the following in the simplest form:

- A**  $i^{24}$       **B**  $i^{37}$       **C**  $i^{-43}$       **D**  $i^{-51}$       **E**  $i^{4n+29}$       **F**  $i^{4n+42}$

## Learn

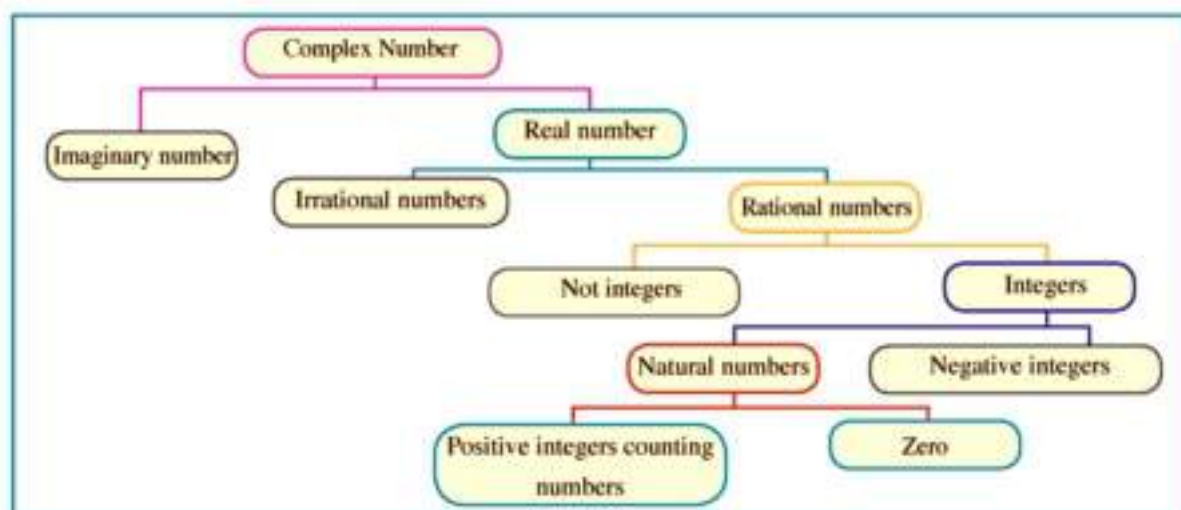
### Complex number

The **complex number** is the number which can be written in the form  $a + bi$  where  $a$  and  $b$  are real numbers.

The following figure shows the set of numbers which form a part of the system of the complex number.

### Complex number

$$\begin{array}{ccc} a & + & bi \\ \downarrow & & \downarrow \\ \text{Real part} & & \text{Imaginary part} \end{array}$$



If  $a$  and  $b$  are two real numbers, then the number  $z$  where  $z = a + bi$ , is called a complex number, where  $a$  is called the real part of the complex number  $z$  and  $bi$  is the imaginary part of the complex number  $z$ .

If  $b = 0$ , then the number  $z = a$  is a pure real and if  $a = 0$ , then the number  $z = bi$  is a pure imaginary where  $b \neq 0$

**Example**

- 15 Solve the equation  $9x^2 + 125 = 61$

**Solution**

The equation  $9x^2 + 125 = 61$

$$9x^2 + 125 - 125 = 61 - 125 \quad \text{add } (-125) \text{ to both sides of the equation}$$

$$9x^2 = -64 \quad \text{simplify}$$

$$x^2 = -\frac{64}{9} \quad \text{Divide both sides by 9}$$

$$x = \pm \sqrt{-\frac{64}{9}} \quad \text{by taking the square root of both sides}$$

$$x = \pm \sqrt{\frac{64}{9}} i = \pm \frac{8}{3} i \quad \text{Definition}$$

**Try to solve**

- 2 Solve each of the following equations:

A  $3x^2 + 27 = 0$

B  $5x^2 + 245 = 0$

C  $4x^2 + 100 = 75$

**Equality of two complex numbers**

Two complex numbers are equal if and only if the two real parts are equal and the two imaginary parts are equal.

if:  $a + bi = c + di$  then:  $a = c$  and  $b = d$  and vice versa.

**Example**

- 16 Find the values of  $x$  and  $y$  which satisfy the equation:  $2x - y + (x - 2y)i = 5 + i$  where  $x$  and  $y \in \mathbb{R}$  and  $i^2 = -1$

**Solution**

By equalizing the two real parts and the two imaginary parts then

$$2x - y = 5, \quad x - 2y = 1$$

Solve the equations we get  $x = 3, \quad y = 1$

**Try to solve**

- 3 Find the values of  $x$  and  $y$  which satisfy each of the following equations:

A  $(2x + 1) + 4yi = 5 - 12i$

B  $2x - 3 + (3y + 1)i = 7 + 10i$





## Operations on complex numbers

It is possible to use the commutative, associative, and distributive properties to add or multiply complex numbers as shown in the following examples:

### Example

- 17 Find in the simplest form the result of each of the following:

A  $(7 - 4i) + (2 + i)$

B  $(2 + 3i)(3 - 4i)$

### Solution

A The expression  $(7 - 4i) + (2 + i)$

$$= (7 + 2) + (-4 + 1)i$$

Commutative and associative properties

$$= 9 - 3i$$

Simplify

B The expression  $(2 + 3i)(3 - 4i)$

$$= 2(3 - 4i) + 3i(3 - 4i)$$

Distributive property

$$= 6 - 8i + 9i - 12i^2$$

remove the parenthesis

$$= 6 - 8i + 9i + 12$$

where  $i^2 = -1$

$$= (6 + 12) + (-8 + 9)i = 18 + i$$

Simplify

### Try to solve

- 4 Find in the simplest form the result of each of the following:

A  $(12 - 5i) - (7 - 9i)$

B  $(4 - 3i)(4 + 3i)$

C  $(5 - 6i)(3 + 2i)$

## Conjugate Numbers

The two numbers  $a + bi$  and  $a - bi$  are called conjugate numbers

**For example**  $4 - 3i$  and  $4 + 3i$  are two conjugate numbers, where:

1)  $(4 - 3i) + (4 + 3i) = (4)^2 - (3i)^2$  (the result as a real number)

$$= 16 - 9i^2 = 16 - 9(-1) = 25$$

(The result is a real number)

2)  $(4 - 3i) + (4 + 3i) = 8$  (the result a real number)



**Critical thinking:**

Is the sum of two conjugate numbers always a real number? explain.

Is the product of two conjugate numbers always a real number? explain

**Example**

- 18 Find the values of  $x$  and  $y$  which satisfy the equation:

$$\frac{(2+i)(2-i)}{3+4i} = x + iy$$

**Solution**

$$\frac{4-i^2}{3+4i} = x + iy$$

$$\frac{4+1}{3+4i} \times \frac{3-4i}{3-4i} = x + iy$$

$$\frac{5(3-4i)}{25} = x + iy$$

$$\frac{3-4i}{5} = x + iy$$

$$\text{i.e. } x = \frac{3}{5}, \quad y = -\frac{4}{5}$$

By removing the parentheses

multiply up and down the L.H.S by  $3 - 4i$

simplify

apply the equality of two complex numbers

**Try to solve**

- 5 Find in the simplest form, the value of each of the following:

A  $\frac{4-6i}{2i}$

B  $\frac{26}{3-2i}$

C  $\frac{3-i}{2-i}$

D  $\frac{3+4i}{5-2i}$

**Example**

- 19 **Electricity:** Find the total electric current intensity passing through two resistances connected on parallel in a closed circuit, if the current intensity in the first resistance is  $5 - 3i$  ampere and the second resistance is  $2 + i$  ampere ( given that the total current intensity equals the sum of the two current intensities which passes the two resistances)

**Solution**

$\therefore$  The total electric current intensity = the sum of the two current intensities passing in the two resistances.

$$\begin{aligned} \therefore &= (5 - 3i) + (2 + i) \\ &= (5 + 2) + (-3 + 1)i \\ &= 7 - 2i \text{ ampere} \end{aligned}$$

### Try to solve

- 6 If the electric current intensity passes in two resistances connected on parallel in a closed circuit equals  $6 + 4i$  ampere, and the current intensity passes in one of them equals  $\frac{17}{4-i}$ , then find the current intensity passing in the other resistance.

### Check your understanding

- 1 **Critical thinking:** Find in the simplest form  $(1-i)^{10}$ .



#### Exercises (1 - 2)



- 1 Simplify:

A  $i^{66}$       B  $i^{-45}$       C  $i^{48+2}$       D  $i^{48-1}$

- 2 Simplify:

A  $\sqrt{-18} \times \sqrt{-12}$       B  $3i(-2i)$       C  $(-4i)(-6i)$       D  $(-2i)^3(-3i)^2$

- 3 Find in the simplest form:

A  $(3+2i) + (2-5i)$       B  $(26-4i) - (9-20i)$   
C  $(20+25i) - (9-20i)$

- 4 Rewrite each of the following in the form  $a + bi$

A  $(2+3i) - (1-2i)$       B  $(1+2i^3)(2+3i^5+4i^6)$

- 5 Rewrite each of the following in the form  $a + bi$

A  $\frac{2}{1-i}$       B  $\frac{4+i}{i}$       C  $\frac{2-3i}{3-i}$       D  $\frac{(3-i)(3-i)}{3-4i}$

- 6 Solve each of the following equations:

A  $3x^2 + 12 = 0$       B  $4y^2 + 20 = 0$       C  $4z^2 + 72 = 0$       D  $\frac{3}{5}y^2 + 15 = 0$

- 7 **Electricity:** find the total current intensity of the electric current passing through two resistances connected in parallel in a closed circuit if the current intensity in the first resistance is  $(4-2i)$  ampere and in the second one is  $\frac{6+3i}{2-i}$  ampere

- 8 **Discover the error:** Find the simplest form of the expression:  $(2+3i)^2(2-3i)$

#### Ahmed's answer

$$\begin{aligned} & (2+3i)(2+3i)(2-3i) \\ &= (2+3i)(4-9i^2) \\ &= (2+3i)(4+9) = 13(2+3i) \\ &= 26 + 39i \end{aligned}$$

#### Karim's answer

$$\begin{aligned} & (2+3i)^2(2-3i) = (4+9i^2)(2-3i) \\ &= (4-9)(2-3i) = -5(2-3i) \\ &= -10 + 15i \end{aligned}$$

Which solutions is correct? Why?

# Determining the Types of Roots of a Quadratic Equation

# 1 - 3



You have previously studied to solve the quadratic equation in one variable in  $\mathbb{R}$ , and you have known that a quadratic equation has two roots or a unique repeated solution, or there is no solution. Is it possible to find the number of roots (solutions) of the quadratic equation in  $\mathbb{R}$  without solving it?



## Discriminant

The two roots of the quadratic equation  $ax^2 + bx + c = 0$  where  $a \neq 0$  and  $a, b, c \in \mathbb{R}$

are:  $\frac{-b + \sqrt{b^2 - 4ac}}{2a}$ ,  $\frac{-b - \sqrt{b^2 - 4ac}}{2a}$

and the two roots contain the expression  $\sqrt{b^2 - 4ac}$ .

the expression  $b^2 - 4ac$  is called the discriminant of the quadratic equation and is used to determine the type of the two roots of the equation.

## Example

- 1 Determine the type of the two roots of each of the following equations:

A  $5x^2 + x - 7 = 0$

B  $x^2 - 2x + 1 = 0$

C  $-x^2 + 5x - 30 = 0$



## Solution

To determine the type of the two roots:

A  $a = 5, b = 1, c = -7$

$$\begin{aligned} \text{the discriminant} &= b^2 - 4ac \\ &= 1 - 4 \times 5 \times (-7) = 141 \end{aligned}$$

$\therefore$  the discriminant is positive,  $\therefore$  there are two real different roots.

B  $a = 1, b = -2, c = 1$

$$\begin{aligned} \text{the discriminant} &= b^2 - 4ac \\ &= 4 - 4 \times 1 \times 1 = 0 \end{aligned}$$

$\therefore$  the discriminant equals zero,  $\therefore$  the two roots are real and equal.

## You will Learn

- How to determine the type of the two roots of the quadratic equation

## Key - Terms

- Root
- Discriminant

## Materials

- Scientific Calculator



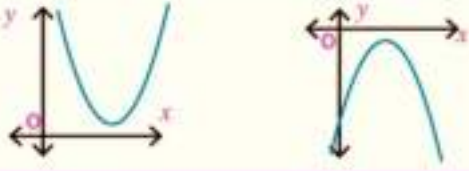


**C**  $a = -1, b = 5, c = -30$

the discriminant  $= b^2 - 4ac$   
 $= 25 - 4 \times -1 \times -30 = -95$

$\therefore$  the discriminant is negative,  $\therefore$  there are two complex non real and conjugate roots.

Notice that

Discriminant	The type of the two roots	Sketch of the function related to the equation
$(b^2 - 4ac) > 0$	two real different roots	
$b^2 - 4ac = 0$	a real repeated root two equal roots	
$b^2 - 4ac < 0$	two complex and non real roots (Conjugate)	

### Try to solve

1 Determine the type of the two roots for each of the following equations :

**A**  $6x^2 = 19x - 15$

**B**  $12x - 4x^2 = 9$

**C**  $x(x - 2) = 5$

**D**  $x(x + 5) = 2(x - 7)$

### Example

2 Prove that the two roots of the equation  $2x^2 - 3x + 2 = 0$  are complex and not real, then use the general formula to find two roots roots.

### Solution

$a = 2, b = -3$  and  $c = 2$

$\therefore$  the discriminant  $= b^2 - 4ac$

$\therefore$  the discriminant  $= (-3)^2 - 4 \times 2 \times 2 = 9 - 16 = -7$

$\therefore$  the discriminant is negative

$\therefore$  there are two complex roots and not real

The general formula:  $x = \frac{-b \pm \sqrt{b^2 - 4ac}}{2a}$

$$x = \frac{-(-3) \pm \sqrt{7i^2}}{2 \times 2} = \frac{3 \pm \sqrt{7} i}{4}$$

The two roots of the equation are:  $\frac{3}{4} + \frac{\sqrt{7}}{4} i$  and  $\frac{3}{4} - \frac{\sqrt{7}}{4} i$



**Critical thinking:** If the discriminant is negative, is it necessary that the two roots of the quadratic equation in the set of complex numbers are conjugate numbers? Give an example to explain

**Try to solve**

- 2 Prove that the two roots of the equation  $7x^2 - 11x + 5 = 0$  are complex, then use the general formula to find those two roots.

**Example**

- 3 If the two roots of the equation  $x^2 + 2(k - 1)x + 9 = 0$  are equal, then find the real values of K and check your answer:

**Solution**

$$\begin{aligned} b^2 - 4ac &= 0 \\ 4(k - 1)^2 - 4 \times 1 \times 9 &= 0 \\ 4k^2 - 8k - 32 &= 0 \\ k^2 - 2k - 8 &= 0 \\ (k - 4)(k + 2) &= 0 \\ k &= 4 \text{ or } k = -2 \end{aligned}$$

**check:** when  $k = 4$   
 the equation becomes:  $x^2 + 6x + 9 = 0$   
 and it has two equal roots which are:  $-3, -3$   
 check when  $k = -2$   
 the equation becomes:  $x^2 - 6x + 9 = 0$   
 and it has two equal roots which are:  $3, 3$

**Try to solve**

- 3 If the two roots of the equation  $x^2 - 2kx + 7k - 6x + 9 = 0$  are equal, then find the real values of K and then find the two roots.



**Exercises (1 - 3)**



**First: Multiple choice:**

- 1 The two roots of the equation  $x^2 - 4x + k = 0$  are equal if:  
 A  $k = 1$       B  $k = 4$       C  $k = 8$       D  $k = 16$
- 2 The two roots of the equation  $x^2 - 2x + M = 0$  are real different if :  
 A  $M = 1$       B  $M > 1$       C  $M > 1$       D  $M = 4$
- 3 The two roots of the equation  $Lx^2 - 12x + 9 = 0$  are complex and not real if :  
 A  $L < 4$       B  $L > 4$       C  $L = 4$       D  $L = 1$

**Second: Answer the following questions:**

- 4 Determine the number of roots and their types in the following quadratic equation:
- |                             |                                      |
|-----------------------------|--------------------------------------|
| A $x^2 - 2x + 5 = 0$        | B $3x^2 + 10x - 4 = 0$               |
| C $x^2 - 10x + 25 = 0$      | D $6x^2 - 19x + 35 = 0$              |
| E $(x - 11) - x(x - 6) = 0$ | F $(x - 1)(x - 7) = 2(x - 3)(x - 4)$ |

- 5 Find the solution of the following equations in the set of complex numbers using the general formula.

A  $x^2 - 4x + 5 = 0$

B  $2x^2 + 6x + 5 = 0$

C  $3x^2 - 7x + 6 = 0$

D  $4x^2 - x + 1 = 0$

- 6 Find the value of K in each of the following cases:

A If the two roots of the equation  $x^2 + 4x + K = 0$  are real different.

B If the two roots of the equation  $x^2 - 3x + 2 + \frac{1}{K} = 0$  are equal.

C If the two roots of the equation  $Kx^2 - 8x + 16 = 0$  are complex and not real.

- 7 If L and M are two rational numbers, then prove that the two roots of the equation:  $Lx^2 + (L - M)x - M = 0$  are two rational numbers.

- 8 Population of Egypt in 2013 is estimated by the relation:

$Z = n^2 + 1.2n + 91$  where (n) is the number of years and (z) is the number of populations in millions.

A What is the population in 2013?

B Estimate the population in 2023.

C Estimate the number of years at which the population will be 334 million.

D Write a report showing the reasons for which the population is increasing and the way of its treatment.

- 9 **Discover the error:** What is the number of solutions of the equation  $2x^2 - 6x = 5$  in R

Ahmed's answer

$$\begin{aligned} b^2 - 4ac &= (-6)^2 - 4 \times 2 \times 5 \\ &= 36 - 40 = -4 \end{aligned}$$

The discriminant is negative, then there is no real solutions

Karim's answer

$$\begin{aligned} b^2 - 4ac &= (-6)^2 - 4 \times 2 \times (-5) \\ &= 36 + 40 = 76 \end{aligned}$$

the discriminant is positive, then there are two real different solutions

- 10 If the two roots of the equation  $x^2 + 2(K - 1)x + (2K + 1) = 0$  are equal, then find the real values of K, and the two roots.

- 11 **Critical thinking:** solve the equation  $36x^2 - 48x + 25 = 0$  in the set of complex numbers.

## Relation Between the Two Roots of the Second Degree Equation and the Coefficients of its Terms



We know that the two roots of the equation  $4x^2 - 8x + 3 = 0$  are  $\frac{1}{2}$  and  $\frac{3}{2}$ .

**Sum of the two roots**  $\frac{1}{2} + \frac{3}{2} = \frac{1+3}{2} = 2$

**Product of the two roots**  $\frac{1}{2} \times \frac{3}{2} = \frac{3}{4}$

Is there a relation between the sum of the two roots of the equation and coefficients of its terms?

Is there a relation between the product of the two roots of the equation and coefficients of its terms?



### Sum and product of two roots

The two roots of the quadratic equation  $ax^2 + bx + c = 0$  are:

$$\frac{-b + \sqrt{b^2 - 4ac}}{2a}, \frac{-b - \sqrt{b^2 - 4ac}}{2a}$$

let the first root be  $L$  and the other root be  $M$  then :

$$L + M = \frac{-b}{a} \quad (\text{Prove that}) \quad L M = \frac{c}{a} \quad (\text{Prove that})$$

**Oral exercise** In the quadratic equation  $ax^2 + bx + c = 0$

find  $L + M$  and  $L M$  in each of the following cases:

- A** If  $a = 1$       **B** If  $b = a$       **C** If  $a = c$

### Example

- 1** Without solving the equation, find the sum and the product of the two roots of the equation:  $2x^2 + 5x - 12 = 0$

### Solution

$$a = 2, b = 5, c = -12$$

$$\text{Sum of the two roots} = \frac{-b}{a} = \frac{-5}{2} = -\frac{5}{2}$$

$$\text{product of the two roots} = \frac{c}{a} = \frac{-12}{2} = -6$$

### You will Learn

- How to find the sum of the two roots of a given quadratic equation.
- How to find the product of the two roots.
- Finding a quadratic equation in terms of another quadratic equation.

### Key - Terms

- Sum of Two Roots
- Product of Two Roots

### Materials

- Scientific calculator



### Try to solve

- 1 Without solving the equation, find the sum and product of the two roots in each of the following equations:
- A  $2x^2 + x - 6 = 0$       B  $3x^2 = 23x - 30$       C  $(2x - 3)(x + 2) = 0$

### Example

- 2 If the product of the two roots of the equation  $2x^2 - 3x + k = 0$  equals 1, find the value of  $k$ , then solve the equation.

### Solution

$$\text{product of the two roots} = \frac{c}{a} \quad \therefore \frac{k}{2} = 1 \quad \therefore k = 2$$

$a = 2, b = -3, c = 2$

The general formula:  $x = \frac{-b \pm \sqrt{b^2 - 4ac}}{2a}$

$$= \frac{3 \pm \sqrt{9 - 16}}{4} = \frac{3 \pm \sqrt{7i^2}}{4} = \frac{3 \pm \sqrt{7}i}{4}$$

The solution set of the equation is  $\left\{ \frac{3}{4} + \frac{\sqrt{7}}{4}i, \frac{3}{4} - \frac{\sqrt{7}}{4}i \right\}$

### Try to solve

- 2 If the product of the two roots of the equation  $3x^2 + 10x - c = 0$  is  $-\frac{8}{3}$ , find the value of  $c$ , then solve the equation.
- 3 If the sum of the two roots of the equation  $2x^2 + bx - 5 = 0$  is  $-\frac{3}{2}$ , find the value of  $b$ , then solve the equation.

### Example

- 3 If  $(1 + i)$  is one of the roots of the equation  $x^2 - 2x + a = 0$  where  $a \in \mathbb{R}$ , then find:
- A The other root      B the value of  $a$ .

### Solution

$a = 1, b = -2, c = a$

A  $\therefore 1 + i$  is one of the two roots of the equation  
 $\therefore$  the other root  $= 1 - i$  because the two roots are conjugate and their sum  $= 2$

B  $\therefore$  Product of the roots  $= a$   
 $\therefore (1 + i)(1 - i) = a$   
 $\therefore 1 + 1 = a$   
 $\therefore a = 2$



### Try to solve

- 4 If  $(2 + i)$  is one of the roots of the equation  $x^2 - 4x + b = 0$ , where  $b \in \mathbb{R}$  then find:  
 A the other root.                      B the value of  $b$ .



### Forming the quadratic equation whose two roots are known

Let  $L$  and  $M$  be the roots of the quadratic equation:  $ax^2 + bx + c = 0$ ,  $a \neq 0$

Dividing both sides of the equation by  $a$ :  $\therefore x^2 + \frac{b}{a}x + \frac{c}{a} = 0$

i.e.  $x^2 - \left(-\frac{b}{a}\right)x + \frac{c}{a} = 0$

$\therefore L$  and  $M$  are the two roots of the quadratic equation,  $L + M = -\frac{b}{a}$ ,  $LM = \frac{c}{a}$

$\therefore$  The quadratic equation whose roots are  $L$  and  $M$  is:

$$x^2 - (L + M)x + LM = 0$$

### Example

- 4 Form the quadratic equation whose two roots are 4 and -3.

### Solution

Let the two roots of the equation be  $L$  and  $M$

$$\therefore L + M = 4 + (-3) = 1, LM = 4(-3) = -12,$$

$\therefore$  The quadratic equation formula is:  $x^2 - (L + M)x + LM = 0$

$$\therefore \text{The equation is: } x^2 - x - 12 = 0$$

### Example

- 5 Form the quadratic equation whose two roots are:  $\frac{-2+2i}{1+i}$  and  $\frac{-2-4i}{2-i}$

### Solution

Let the two roots be  $L$  and  $M$

$$L = \frac{-2+2i}{1+i} \times \frac{1-i}{1-i} = \frac{4i}{2} = 2i$$

$$M = \frac{-2-4i}{2-i} \times \frac{2+i}{2+i} = \frac{-10i}{5} = -2i$$

$$L + M = 2i - 2i = 0$$

$$\therefore LM = 2i \times -2i = -4i^2 = 4$$

$\therefore$  The quadratic equation whose two roots are  $L$  and  $M$  is:  $x^2 - (L + M)x + LM = 0$

$$\therefore x^2 + 4 = 0$$

### Try to solve

- 5 Form the quadratic equation in each of the following given its two roots:

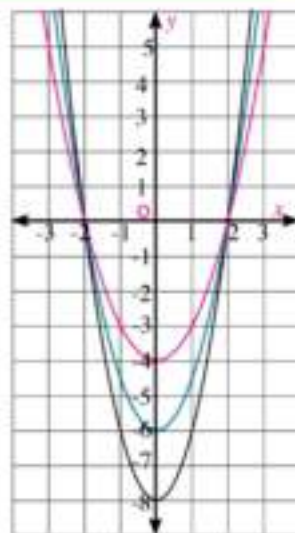
A 3, -5

B  $-9i$ ,  $9i$

C  $\frac{3}{1}$ ,  $\frac{3+3i}{1-i}$

**Critical thinking:** the figure opposite represents a set of parabolas of some quadratic function which each of them passes through the points  $(0, -2)$ ,  $(0, 2)$ .

Find the rule of each function



## Forming a quadratic equation from the roots of another equation

### Example

- 6 If  $L$  and  $M$  are the two roots of the equation  $2x^2 - 3x - 1 = 0$ , then form the quadratic equation whose roots are  $L^2$  and  $M^2$ .

### Solution

The given equation: by substituting  $a = 2$ ,  $b = -3$ ,  $c = -1$ :

$$L + M = -\frac{-3}{2} = \frac{3}{2}, \quad L M = -\frac{1}{2}$$

The required equation by substituting  $L + M = \frac{3}{2}$ ,  $L M = -\frac{1}{2}$  in the formula

$$\begin{aligned} \therefore L^2 + M^2 &= (L + M)^2 - 2LM = \left(\frac{3}{2}\right)^2 - 2\left(-\frac{1}{2}\right) \\ &= \frac{9}{4} + 1 = \frac{9}{4} + \frac{4}{4} = \frac{13}{4} \end{aligned}$$

$$\therefore L^2 M^2 = (LM)^2$$

$$\therefore L^2 M^2 = \left(-\frac{1}{2}\right)^2 = \frac{1}{4}$$

By substituting in the formula of the quadratic equation:

$$x^2 - (\text{sum of the two roots})x + \text{product of the two roots} = 0$$

$$x^2 - \frac{13}{4}x + \frac{1}{4} = 0$$

Multiply both sides of the equation by 4

$$\therefore \text{The required quadratic equation is: } 4x^2 - 13x + 4 = 0$$

### Notice that

$$\begin{aligned} P + M^2 &= (L + M)^2 - 2LM \\ (L - M)^2 &= (L + M)^2 - 4LM \end{aligned}$$

### Try to solve

- 6 In the previous equation  $2x^2 - 3x - 1 = 0$ , form the quadratic equations whose each of its two roots are as follows:

A  $\frac{1}{L}, \frac{1}{M}$

B  $\frac{L}{M}, \frac{M}{L}$

C  $L + M, LM$

### Check your understanding

- 1 In each of the following, form the quadratic equation whose two roots are:
- A  $\frac{3}{4}, \frac{4}{3}$       B  $5\sqrt{3}, -2\sqrt{3}$       C  $3 + \sqrt{2}i, 3 - \sqrt{2}i$
- 2 If  $L$  and  $M$  are the two roots of the equation  $x^2 + 3x - 5 = 0$ , then form the quadratic equation whose roots are  $L^2, M^2$ .



## Exercises (1 - 4)


**First: Complete each of the following:**

- ① If  $x = 3$  is one of the roots of the equation  $x^2 + Mx - 27 = 0$ , then  $M =$  \_\_\_\_\_ and the other root is \_\_\_\_\_
- ② If the product of the two roots of the equation  $2x^2 + 7x + 3K = 0$  equals the sum of the two roots of the equation  $x^2 - (K + 4)x = 0$ , then  $K =$  \_\_\_\_\_
- ③ The quadratic equation which each of its two roots increases 1 than each of the two roots of the quadratic equation  $x^2 - 3x + 2 = 0$  is \_\_\_\_\_
- ④ The quadratic equation which each of its two roots decreases 1 than each of the two roots of the quadratic equation  $x^2 - 5x + 6 = 0$  is \_\_\_\_\_

**Second: multiple choice**

- ⑤ If one of the two roots of the equation  $x^2 - 3x + c = 0$  is twice the other, then  $c =$   
 A -4                      B -2                      C 2                      D 4
- ⑥ If one of the two roots of the equation  $ax^2 - 3x + 2 = 0$  is the multiplicative inverse of the other, then  $a =$   
 A  $\frac{1}{3}$                       B  $\frac{1}{2}$                       C 2                      D 3
- ⑦ If one of the two roots of the equation  $x^2 - (b - 3)x + 5 = 0$  is the additive inverse of the other, then  $b =$   
 A -5                      B -3                      C 3                      D 5

**Third : Answer the following questions**

- ⑧ Find the sum and the product of the two roots in each of the following equations:  
 A  $3x^2 + 19x - 14 = 0$                       B  $4x^2 + 4x - 35 = 0$
- ⑨ Find the value of  $a$ , then find the other root in each of the following equations:  
 A If:  $x = -1$  is one of the two roots of the equation  $x^2 - 2x + a = 0$  \_\_\_\_\_  
 B If:  $x = 2$  is one of the two roots of the equation  $ax^2 - 5x + a = 0$  \_\_\_\_\_
- ⑩ Find the values of  $a$  and  $b$  if:  
 A 2 and 5 are the two roots of the equation  $x^2 + ax + b = 0$   
 B -3 and 7 are the two roots of the equation  $ax^2 - bx - 21 = 0$   
 C -1 and  $\frac{3}{2}$  are the two roots of the equation  $ax^2 - x + b = 0$   
 D  $\sqrt{3}i$  and  $-\sqrt{3}i$  are the two roots of the equation  $x^2 + ax + b = 0$



- 11 Investigate the type of the two roots in each of the following equations, then find the solution set of each equation:

**A**  $x^2 + 2x - 35 = 0$

**B**  $2x^2 + 3x + 7 = 0$

**C**  $x(x - 4) + 5 = 0$

**D**  $3x(3x - 8) + 16 = 0$

- 12 Find the value of  $c$ , if the two roots of the equation  $c x^2 - 12x + 9 = 0$  are equal.

- 13 Find the value of  $a$ , if the two roots of the equation  $x^2 - 3x + 2 + \frac{1}{a} = 0$  are equal.

- 14 Find the value of  $c$ , if the two roots of the equation  $3x^2 - 5x + c = 0$  are equal, then find the two roots.

- 15 Find the value of  $K$ , if one a root of the equation  $x^2 + (K - 1)x - 3 = 0$  is the additive inverse to the other root.

- 16 Find the value of  $K$ , if one root of the equation  $4K x^2 + 7x + K^2 + 4 = 0$  is the multiplicative inverse to the other root.

- 17 Form the quadratic equation whose two roots are :

**A**  $-2, 4$

**B**  $-5i, 5i$

**C**  $\frac{2}{3}, \frac{3}{2}$

**D**

$1 - 3i, 1 + 3i$

**E**  $3 - 2\sqrt{2}i, 3 + 2\sqrt{2}i$

- 18 Find the quadratic equation in which each of the two roots is twice one of the roots of the equation  $2x^2 - 8x + 5 = 0$

- 19 Find the quadratic equation in which each of the two roots exceeds 1 than one of the two roots of the equation :  $x^2 - 7x - 9 = 0$

- 20 Find the quadratic equation in which each of its two roots equals the square of the corresponding root of the equation :  $x^2 + 3x - 5 = 0$

- 21 If  $L$  and  $M$  are the two roots of the equation  $x^2 - 7x + 3 = 0$ , then find the quadratic equation whose roots are:

**A**  $2L, 2M$

**B**  $L + 2, M + 2$

**C**  $\frac{2}{L}, \frac{2}{M}$

**D**  $L + M, LM$

- 22 Areas:** the dimensions of a rectangular piece of land are 6 and 9 metres, it is required to double this area by increasing each dimension with the same distance: Find the additional distance.

---



---

- 23 Critical thinking:** Find the values of  $c$  in the quadratic equation  $7x^2 + 14x + c = 0$  such that the equation has:

- A** two real different roots.  
**B** equal real roots.  
**C** two complex non-real roots.

---



---



---

- 24 Discover the error:** If  $L + 1$  and  $M + 1$  are the roots of the equation  $x^2 + 5x + 3 = 0$  then find the quadratic equation whose roots are  $L$  and  $M$ .

yousof's Answer

$$\begin{aligned} \therefore (L+1) + (M+1) &= -5 \\ \therefore L + M + 2 &= -5 \quad \therefore L + M = -7, \\ \therefore (L+1)(M+1) &= 3 \quad \therefore LM + (L+M) + 1 = 3 \\ \therefore LM - 7 + 1 &= 3 \quad \therefore LM = 9 \\ \text{the equation is : } x^2 + 7x + 9 &= 0 \end{aligned}$$

Amira's answer

$$\begin{aligned} \therefore L + M &= -5, LM = 3 \\ \therefore (L+1) + (M+1) &= L + M + 2 \\ &= -5 + 2 = -3 \\ \therefore (L+1)(M+1) &= LM + (L+M) + 1 \\ &= 3 - 5 + 1 = -1 \\ \text{the equation is : } x^2 + 3x + 1 &= 0 \end{aligned}$$

---



---



---

- 25 Critical thinking:** If the difference between the two roots of the equation  $x^2 + Kx + 2K = 0$  equals twice the product of the two roots of the equation  $x^2 + 3x + K = 0$  then find the value of  $K$ .

---



---



---

# 1 - 5

## Sign of a Function

### You will Learn

- Investigate the sign of:  
constant function - Linear  
function + quadratic function.



You have studied before the graphic representation of a linear and quadratic functions, and recognized the general figure of the curve of each function, can you investigate the sign of each of these functions? We mean by investigating the sign of the function to determine the values of the variable  $x$  (domain of  $x$ ) at which the values of the function  $f$  are as follows:

**Positive**, means  $f(x) > 0$   
**negative**, means  $f(x) < 0$   
**equal to zero**, means  $f(x) = 0$

### Key - Terms

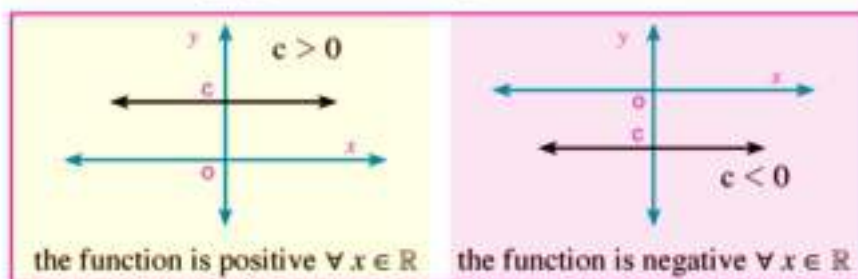
- Sign of a function
- Constant Function
- Linear Function
- Quadratic Function



### First: Sign of the Constant Function

Sign of the constant function  $f$  where  $f(x) = c$  ( $c \neq 0$ ) is the same as the sign of  $c \forall x \in \mathbb{R}$ .

and the following figure shows the sign of the function  $f$ .



### Materials

- Scientific Calculator

### Example

1 Determine the sign of each of the following functions:

**A**  $f(x) = 5$

**B**  $f(x) = -7$

### Solution

**A**  $\because f(x) > 0$

$\therefore$  Sign of the function is positive  $\forall x \in \mathbb{R}$

**B**  $\because f(x) < 0$

$\therefore$  Sign of the function is negative  $\forall x \in \mathbb{R}$



### Try to solve

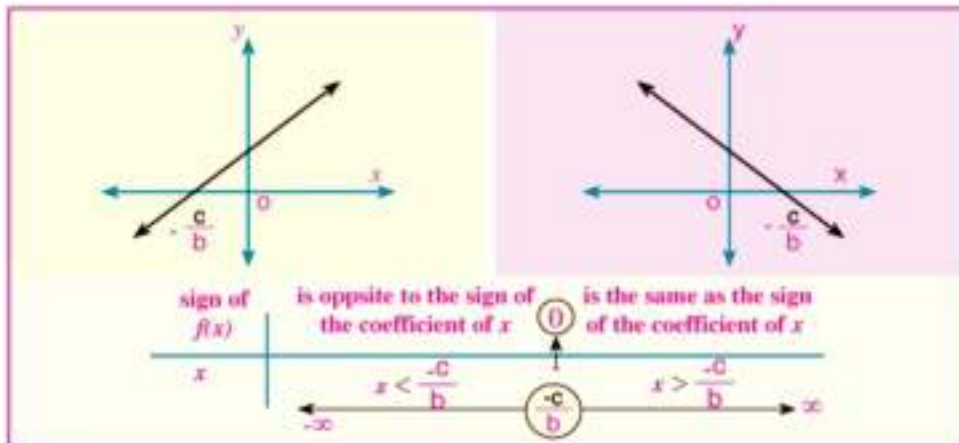
- 1 Determine the sign of each of the following functions:

A  $f(x) = -\frac{2}{3}$

B  $f(x) = \frac{5}{2}$

### Second: Sign of the Linear Function

the rule of the function  $f$  is  $f(x) = bx + c$ ,  $b \neq 0$ ,  $x = -\frac{c}{b}$  when  $f(x) = 0$  and the following figure shows the sign of the function  $f$ .



### Example

- 2 Determine the sign of the function  $f$  where  $f(x) = x - 2$  and represent it graphically:

### Solution

The rule of the function:  $f(x) = x - 2$

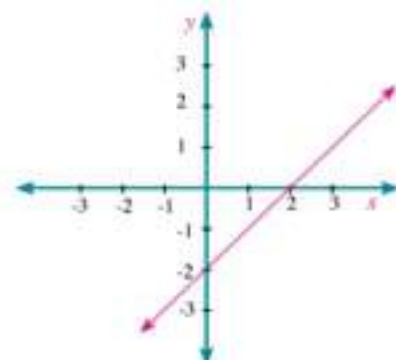
Drawing the graph of the function:

when  $f(x) = 0$  then  $x = 2$

when  $x = 0$  then  $f(0) = -2$

From the graph, we get:

- The function is positive when  $x > 2$
- The function  $f(x) = 0$  when  $x = 2$
- The function is negative when  $x < 2$



### Try to solve

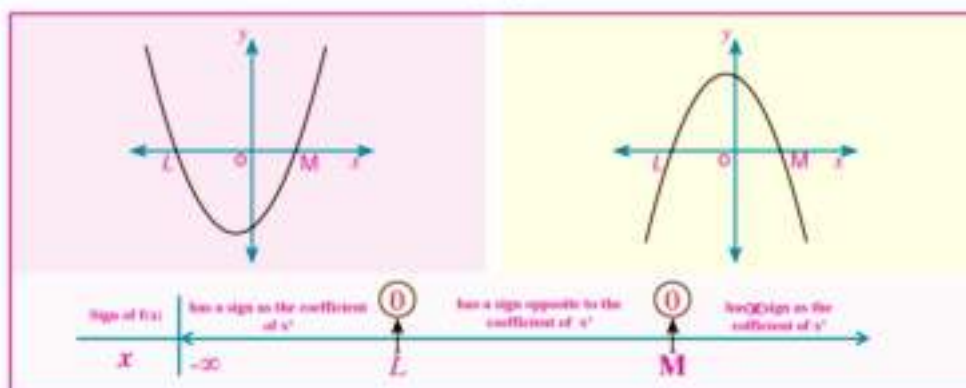
- 2 Determine the sign of the function  $f(x) = -2x - 4$  and represent it graphically.

### Third: Sign of the Quadratic Function.

To determine the sign of the quadratic function  $f$ , where  $f(x) = ax^2 + bx + c$

**We find the discriminant of the equation  $ax^2 + bx + c = 0$  if:**

**First:**  $b^2 - 4ac > 0$  then there are two real roots  $L$  and  $M$  of the equation, and let  $L < M$ , then the sign of the function is as in the following figure:



#### Example

- 3 Represent graphically  $f$ , where  $f(x) = x^2 - 2x - 3$ , then determine the sign of the function  $f$ .

#### Solution

By factorizing the equation:  $x^2 - 2x - 3 = 0$   
 $(x - 3)(x + 1) = 0$

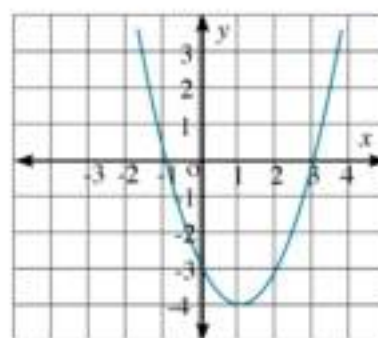
Then the two roots of the equation are:  $-1, 3$

From the graph, we get:

➤  $f(x) > 0$  when  $x \in \mathbb{R} - [-1, 3]$

➤  $f(x) < 0$  when  $x \in ]-1, 3[$

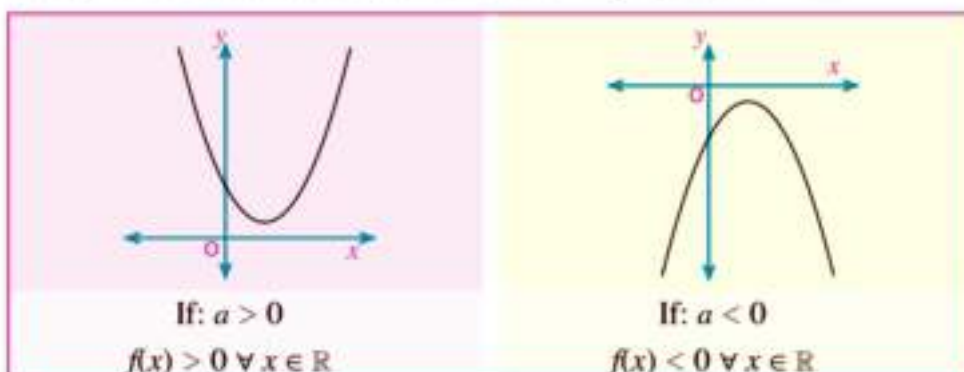
➤  $f(x) = 0$  when  $x \in \{-1, 3\}$



#### Try to solve

- 3 Represent graphically  $f$ , where  $f(x) = x^2 - x + 6$ , then determine the sign of the function  $f$ .

**Second:** If:  $b^2 - 4ac < 0$ , then there are no real roots and the sign of the function  $f$  is the same as the sign of the coefficient of  $x^2$ , and the following figures show that.



### Example

- 4 Represent graphically  $f$  where  $f(x) = x^2 - 4x + 5$ , then determine the sign of the function  $f$ .



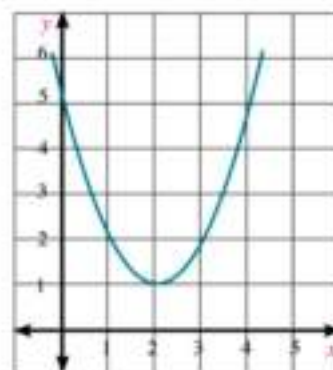
### Solution

the discriminant  $(b^2 - 4ac) = (-4)^2 - 4 \times 1 \times 5$   
 $= 16 - 20 = -4 < 0$

thus, the equation  $x^2 - 4x + 5 = 0$  has no real roots

Sign of the function is positive  $\forall x \in \mathbb{R}$

(because the coefficient of  $x^2 > 0$ )



### Try to solve

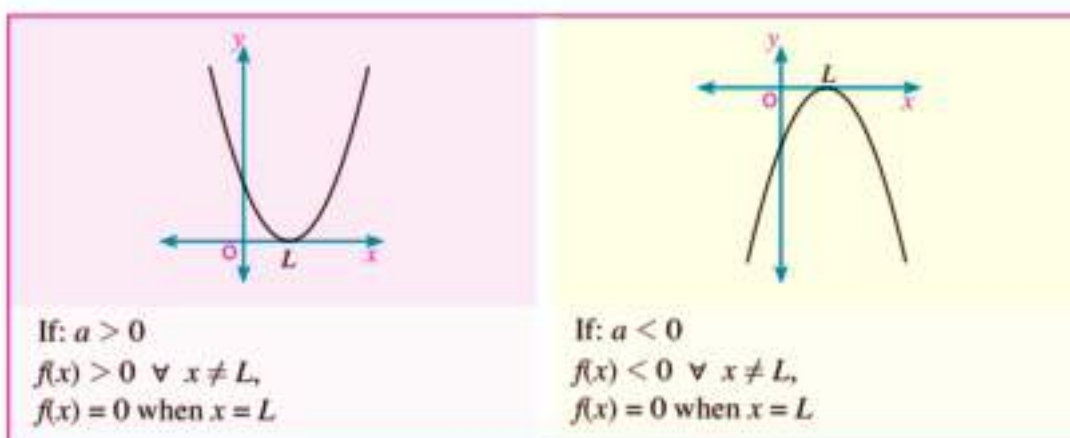
- 4 Represent graphically  $f$ , where  $f(x) = -x^2 - 2x - 4$ , then determine the sign of the function  $f$ .

**Third:** If:  $b^2 - 4ac = 0$ , then there are two equal roots of the equation, let each of them equal  $L$ , and the sign of the function  $f$  is as follows:

➤ the same as  $a$  when  $x \neq L$

➤  $f(x) = 0$  when  $x = L$

the following figures show that.





### Example

- 5 Represent graphically  $f$  where  $f(x) = 4x^2 - 4x + 1$ , then determine the sign of the function  $f$ .

### Solution

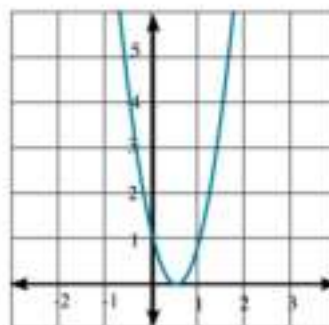
$$\begin{aligned}\text{The discriminant } (b^2 - 4ac) &= (-4)^2 - 4 \times 4 \times 1 \\ &= 16 - 16 = 0\end{aligned}$$

Thus, the equation  $4x^2 - 4x + 1 = 0$  has two equal roots.

**By factorization:**  $(2x - 1)^2 = 0$

**Put:**  $2x - 1 = 0$  then  $x = \frac{1}{2}$

$$f(x) > 0 \text{ when } x \neq \frac{1}{2}, \quad f(x) = 0 \text{ when } x = \frac{1}{2}$$



### Try to solve

- 5 Represent graphically  $f$ , where  $f(x) = -4x^2 - 12x - 9$ , then determine the sign of the function  $f$ .

### Example

- 6 Prove that: for all values of  $x \notin \mathbb{R}$ , the two roots of the equation  $2x^2 - kx + k - 3 = 0$  are real different.

### Solution

$$\text{The discriminant } (b^2 - 4ac) = (-k)^2 - 4 \times 2 \times (k - 3) = k^2 - 8k + 24$$

**The two roots of the equation are real different if the discriminant is positive.**

**Investigate the sign of the expression**  $y = k^2 - 8k + 24$

**The discriminant of the equation  $k^2 - 8k + 24 = 0$  is:**

$$(-8)^2 - 4 \times 1 \times 24 = 64 - 96 = -32 < 0$$

Thus the equation

$$k^2 - 8k + 24 = 0$$

has no real roots

$\therefore$  **sign of the expression**

$$y = k^2 - 8k + 24$$

is positive  $\forall k \in \mathbb{R}$  (why)?

**Then the discriminant of:**

$$2x^2 - kx + k - 3 = 0$$

is positive  $\forall x \in \mathbb{R}$

$\therefore$  **The two roots of the equation**

$$2x^2 - kx + k - 3 = 0$$

are real different  $\forall x \in \mathbb{R}$

### Check your understanding

- 1 Determine the sign of each of the following functions:

**A**  $f(x) = 2x - 3$

**B**  $f(x) = 4 - x$

**C**  $f(x) = x^2 - 4$

**D**  $f(x) = 1 - x^2$

**E**  $f(x) = 4 + 4x + x^2$

**F**  $f(x) = 3x - 2x^2 + 4$



## Exercises (1 - 5)

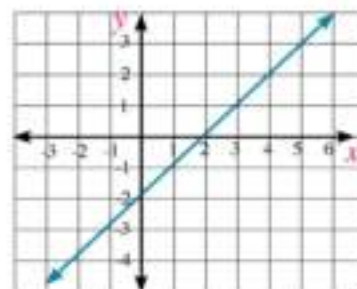


**First : complete each of the following:**

- 1 The sign of the function  $f$ , where  $f(x) = -5$  is \_\_\_\_\_ in the interval \_\_\_\_\_
- 2 The sign of the function  $f$ , where  $f(x) = x^2 + 1$  is \_\_\_\_\_ in the interval \_\_\_\_\_
- 3 The sign of the function  $f$ , where  $f(x) = x^2 - 6x + 9$  is positive in the interval \_\_\_\_\_
- 4 The sign of the function  $f$ , where  $f(x) = x - 2$  is positive in the interval \_\_\_\_\_
- 5 The sign of the function  $f$ , where  $f(x) = 3 - x$  is negative in the interval \_\_\_\_\_
- 6 The sign of the function  $f$ , where  $f(x) = -(x - 1)(x + 2)$  is positive in the interval \_\_\_\_\_
- 7 The sign of the function  $f$ , where  $f(x) = x^2 + 4x - 5$  is negative in the interval \_\_\_\_\_

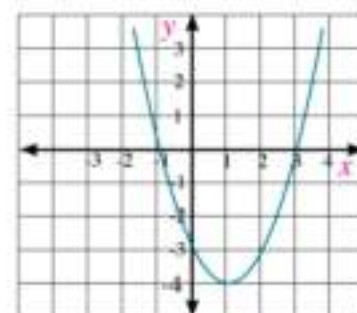
- 8 The figure opposite represents a first degree function in  $x$ :

- A The function is positive in the interval \_\_\_\_\_
- B the function is negative in the interval \_\_\_\_\_



- 9 The figure opposite represents a second degree function in  $x$ :

- A  $f(x) = 0$  when  $x \ni$  \_\_\_\_\_
- B  $f(x) < 0$  when  $x \ni$  \_\_\_\_\_
- C  $f(x) > 0$  when  $x \ni$  \_\_\_\_\_



## Second: answer the following questions:

- 10 In exercises from **A** to **N**, determine the sign of each of the following functions:

<b>A</b> $f(x) = 2$	_____	<b>B</b> $f(x) = 2x$	_____
<b>C</b> $f(x) = -3x$	_____	<b>D</b> $f(x) = 2x + 4$	_____
<b>E</b> $f(x) = 3 - 2x$	_____	<b>F</b> $f(x) = x^2$	_____
<b>G</b> $f(x) = 2x^2$	_____	<b>H</b> $f(x) = x^2 - 4$	_____
<b>I</b> $f(x) = 1 - x^2$	_____	<b>J</b> $f(x) = (x - 2)(x + 3)$	_____
<b>K</b> $f(x) = (2x - 3)^2$	_____	<b>L</b> $f(x) = x^2 - x - 2$	_____
<b>M</b> $f(x) = x^2 - 8x + 16$	_____	<b>N</b> $f(x) = -4x^2 + 10x - 25$	_____

- 11 Graph the curve of the function  $f(x) = x^2 - 9$  in the interval  $[-3, 4]$ , hence determine the sign of  $f(x)$ .
- 12 Graph the curve of the function  $f(x) = -x^2 + 2x + 4$  in the interval  $[-3, 5]$ , hence determine the sign of  $f(x)$ .
- 13 **Discover the error:** If  $f(x) = x + 1$ ,  $g(x) = 1 - x^2$ , then determine the interval at which the two functions are positive together.

yousof's answer

$x = -1$  makes  $f(x) = 0$   
 $f(x)$  is positive in the interval  $]-1, \infty[$ ,  
 $x = \pm 1$  makes  $g(x) = 0$   
 $g(x)$  is positive in the interval  $]-1, 1[$   
 thus the two functions are positive together  
 in the interval  
 $]-1, \infty[ \cup ]-1, 1[ = ]-1, \infty[$

Amira's answer

$x = -1$  makes  $f(x) = 0$   
 $f(x)$  is positive in the interval  $]-1, \infty[$ ,  
 $x = \pm 1$  makes  $g(x) = 0$   
 $g(x)$  is positive in the interval  $]-1, 1[$   
 thus the two functions are positive together  
 in the interval  
 $]-1, \infty[ \cap ]-1, 1[ = ]-1, 1[$

Which of the two answers is correct? illustrate each of the two functions graphically and check your answer.

- 14 **Gold mines:** The production of a gold mine from 1990 to 2010 estimated in thousand ounce was determined by the function  $f: f(n) = 12n^2 - 96n + 480$  where " $n$ " is the number of years and  $f(n)$  is the production of gold

**First:** Investigate the sign of the production function  $f$ .

**Second:** find the production of the gold mine (in thousand ounce) in each of the two years 1990, 2005.

**Third:** In which years, the production of the gold was 2016 thousand ounce?



## Quadratic Inequalities in one variable

1 - 6



You have studied before the first degree inequality in one variable, and you have known that solving the inequality means, finding all values of the unknown which satisfy this inequality, and is written in the form of an interval. can you solve the second degree inequality in one variable?

**Notice that:**

$x^2 - x - 2 > 0$  is a second degree inequality as shown in the figure opposite while  $f(x) = x^2 - x - 2$  is the quadratic function related with this inequality.

**From the figure opposite, we get:**

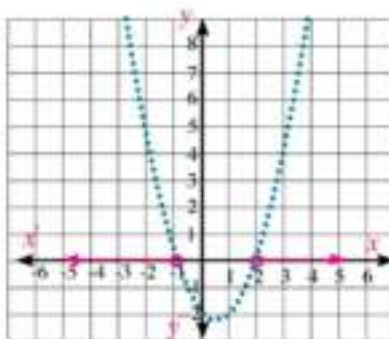
➤ The solution set of the inequality

$$x^2 - x - 2 > 0 \text{ in } \mathbb{R}$$

$$\text{is } ]-\infty, -1[ \cup ]2, \infty[$$

➤ The solution set of the inequality

$$x^2 - x - 2 < 0 \text{ in } \mathbb{R} \text{ is } ]-1, 2[$$



### You will Learn

- Solving the quadratic inequality in one variable.

### Key - Terms

- Inequality



### Solving the quadratic inequality in one variable

#### Example

- Solve the inequality:  $x^2 - 5x - 6 > 0$

### Materials

- Scientific calculator

### Solution

To solve the inequality, we do the following steps:

**Step (1):** We write the quadratic function related to the inequality as follows:

$$f(x) = x^2 - 5x - 6$$

**Step (2):** We study the sign of the function  $f$  where  $f(x) = x^2 - 5x - 6$ , and represent it on the number line by putting  $f(x) = 0$

$$x^2 - 5x - 6 = 0$$

$$\therefore (x - 6)(x + 1) = 0$$

$$x = 6 \text{ or } x = -1$$



**Step (3):** We determine the intervals which satisfy the inequality  $x^2 - 5x - 6 > 0$



Then the solution set of the inequality is:  $]-\infty, -1[ \cup ]6, \infty[$

### Try to solve

1 Solve each of the following inequalities:

**A**  $x^2 + 2x - 8 > 0$

**B**  $x^2 + x + 12 > 0$

### Example

2 Solve the inequality:  $(x + 3)^2 \leq 10 - 3(x + 3)$ .

### Solution

★

$$\therefore (x + 3)^2 \leq 10 - 3(x + 3)$$

$$\therefore x^2 + 6x + 9 \leq 10 - 3x - 9$$

$$\therefore x^2 + 9x + 8 \leq 0$$

$$x^2 + 9x + 8 = 0$$

$$(x + 8)(x + 1) = 0$$

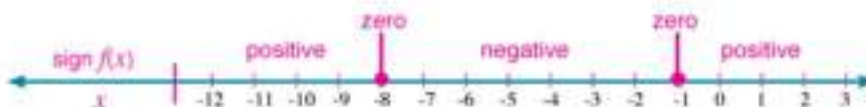
$$\{-8, -1\}$$

The equation related to the inequality is:

By factorization into factors:

The solution set of the equation is:

★ The following number line shows the sign of the function  $f(x) = x^2 + 9x + 8$



Then, the solution set of the inequality is:  $[-8, -1]$

### Try to solve

2 Solve the following inequalities:

A  $5x^2 + 12x \geq 44$

B  $(x + 3)^2 + 3(x + 3) - 10 \geq 0$



### Check your understanding

- 1 What is the difference between the quadratic equation in one variable and the quadratic inequality in one variable?
- 2 What is the relation between investigating the sign of the quadratic function and solving the quadratic inequalities in one variable.
- 3 **Discover the error:** Find the solution set of the inequality  $(x + 1)^2 < 4(2x - 1)^2$

#### Yousef's solution

$$\therefore (x + 1)^2 < 4(2x - 1)^2$$

$$\therefore x + 1 < 2(2x - 1) \text{ taking the square root to both sides}$$

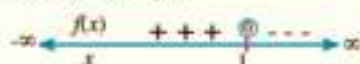
$$\therefore -4x + x + 2 + 1 < 0$$

$$\therefore -3x + 3 < 0$$

The equation related to the inequality is:

$$-3x + 3 = 0$$

the solution set  $\{1\}$



- ★ Investigating the sign of the function  $f$  where  
 $f(x) = -3x + 3$

**We get:**

The solution set of the inequality is  $]1, \infty[$

#### Nour's solution

$$\therefore (x + 1)^2 < 4(2x - 1)^2$$

$$\therefore x^2 + 2x + 1 < 16x^2 - 16x + 4$$

$$\therefore 15x^2 - 18x + 3 > 0$$

The equation related to the inequality is:

$$\therefore 3(5x - 1)(x - 1) = 0$$

The solution set is  $\{1, \frac{1}{5}\}$



- ★ Investigating the Sign of the function  $f$  where  
 $f(x) = 15x^2 - 18x + 3$

**We get:**

The solution set of the inequality is  
 $\mathbb{R} - [\frac{1}{5}, 1]$

4 **Critical thinking:**

Find solution set of the inequality:

$$(x + 3)^2 < 10 - 3(x + 3)$$





### Exercises (1 - 6)



Find the solution set of each of the following quadratic inequalities:

- 1  $x^2 \leq 9$  \_\_\_\_\_  
\_\_\_\_\_
- 2  $x^2 - 1 \leq 0$  \_\_\_\_\_  
\_\_\_\_\_
- 3  $2x - x^2 < 0$  \_\_\_\_\_  
\_\_\_\_\_
- 4  $x^2 + 5 \leq 1$  \_\_\_\_\_  
\_\_\_\_\_
- 5  $(x - 2)(x - 5) < 0$  \_\_\_\_\_  
\_\_\_\_\_
- 6  $x(x + 2) - 3 \leq 0$  \_\_\_\_\_  
\_\_\_\_\_
- 7  $(x - 2)^2 \leq -5$  \_\_\_\_\_  
\_\_\_\_\_
- 8  $5 - 2x \leq x^2$  \_\_\_\_\_  
\_\_\_\_\_
- 9  $x^2 \geq 6x - 9$  \_\_\_\_\_  
\_\_\_\_\_
- 10  $3x^2 \leq 11x + 4$  \_\_\_\_\_  
\_\_\_\_\_
- 11  $x^2 - 4x + 4 \geq 0$  \_\_\_\_\_  
\_\_\_\_\_
- 12  $7 + x^2 - 4x < 0$  \_\_\_\_\_  
\_\_\_\_\_



### General Exercises

For more exercises, please visit the website of Ministry of Education.

# Unit summary

- ① **Solve the equation:**  $ax^2 + bx + c = 0$  where  $a, b, c \in \mathbb{R}, a \neq 0$

Method
Factorization into factors
Completing the square
Using the general formula
Graphic representation

- ② **Investigating the type of the two roots of the quadratic equation**

The expression  $(b^2 - 4ac)$  is called the discriminant of the quadratic equation which shows the type of the two roots of the equation and its number of solutions as follows:

- ★  $(b^2 - 4ac) > 0$  there are two real different roots.
- ★  $b^2 - 4ac = 0$  There is a real root .
- ★  $b^2 - 4ac < 0$  There are two complex and not real roots.

- ③ **Complex numbers:**

The complex number is that number which can be written in the form  $a + b i$ , where  $a$  and  $b$  are two real numbers,  $b i$  is the imaginary part, the following table shows the positive integers power of  $i$ :

$i^{4n+1}$	$i^{4n+2}$	$i^{4n+3}$	$i^{4n}$
$i$	$-1$	$-i$	$1$

**Equality of two complex numbers:** if  $a + b i = c + d i$ , then  $a = c, b = d$

**Properties of operations:** You can use the commutative , associative and distributive properties when adding or multiplying the complex numbers. When we add or subtract the complex numbers, we add the real parts together, and the imaginary parts together.

**Two conjugate numbers:** The two numbers  $a + b i$  and  $a - b i$  are called two conjugate numbers, where their sum is a real number and their product is also a real number.

# Unit summary

## 4 Sum and product of the two roots of the quadratic equation:

If the two roots of the equation  $ax^2 + bx + c = 0$  are  $L$  and  $M$  then:  $L + M = -\frac{b}{a}$  and  $L M = \frac{c}{a}$

## 5 Forming the quadratic equation in terms of its two roots:

If  $L$  and  $M$  are the two roots of the quadratic equation, then the quadratic equation is in the following form:

★  $(x - L)(x - M) = 0$

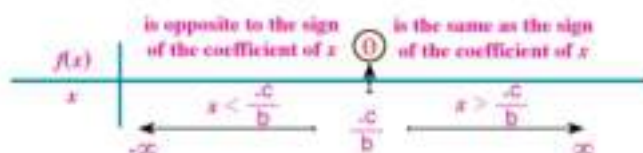
★ If  $L + M = -\frac{b}{a}$  and  $L M = \frac{c}{a}$ , then the equation is  $x^2 - (L + M)x + L M = 0$

## 6 Investigating the sign of the function:

★ Sign of the constant function  $f$ , where  $f(x) = c$  ( $c \neq 0$ ) is the same as the sign of  $c \forall x \in \mathbb{R}$ .

★ The rule of the linear function  $f$  where  $f(x) = bx + c$  and  $b \neq 0$

then  $x = -\frac{c}{b}$  when  $f(x) = 0$ , the following figure represents the sign of the function  $f$ :



★ To determine the sign of the function  $f$ , where  $f(x) = ax^2 + bx + c$  and  $a \neq 0$ , we find the discriminant.

★ If:  $b^2 - 4ac > 0$ , the sign of the function  $f$  is determined according to the following figure:



★ If:  $b^2 - 4ac = 0$ , then there are two equal real roots and let each of them be  $L$ , the sign of the function  $f$  is the same as the sign of  $a$  when  $x \neq L$  and  $f(x) = 0$  when  $x = L$ .

★ If:  $b^2 - 4ac < 0$ , then there are no real roots and the sign of the function  $f$  is the same as the sign of the coefficient of  $x^2$ .



# Unit summary

## 7 Solving the quadratic inequalities in one variable:

To solve the quadratic inequality, we follow the following steps:

- 1- Write the quadratic function related to the inequality  $y = f(x)$  in the general form.
- 2- Study the sign of the function  $f$  related to the inequality and represent it on the number line.
- 3- Determine the solution set of the inequality according to the intervals which satisfy it.

## @ Enrichment Information

Please visit the following links.



# Geometry

## Unit

# 2

# Similarity

### Unit objectives

**By the end of the unit, the student should be able to:**

- ✦ Revise what he / she has previously studied in preparatory stage on similarity.
- ✦ Recognize similarity of two polygons.
- ✦ Recognize and prove the theorem (if the length of the corresponding sides...)
- ✦ Recognize and prove the theorem : ( If the measure of an angle of a triangle ...)
- ✦ Recognize and prove the theorem : ( the ratio between the areas of the surfaces of two similar triangle ... ) .
- ✦ Recognize and deduce the fact : ( Any two similar polygons can be divided into...)
- ✦ Recognize and prove the theorem : ( the ratio between the areas of the surfaces of two similar polygons...)
- ✦ Recognize and deduce the well known problem ; ( If the two lines containing the two chords in a circle are intersecting at a point then ... ) and vice versa and corollaries on it .

### Key - Terms

- |                       |                       |                           |
|-----------------------|-----------------------|---------------------------|
| ✦ Ratio               | ✦ Similar Triangles   | ✦ Chord                   |
| ✦ Proportion          | ✦ Corresponding Sides | ✦ Secant                  |
| ✦ Measure of an Angle | ✦ Congruent Angles    | ✦ Tangent                 |
| ✦ Length              | ✦ Regular Polygon     | ✦ Diameter                |
| ✦ Area                | ✦ Quadrilateral       | ✦ Common External Tangent |
| ✦ Cross Product       | ✦ Pentagon            | ✦ Common Internal Tangent |
| ✦ Extreme             | ✦ Postulate/Axiom     | ✦ Concentric Circles      |
| ✦ Mean                | ✦ Perimeter           | ✦ Similarity Ratio        |
| ✦ Similar Polygons    | ✦ Area of polygon     |                           |





## Lessons of the Unit

**Lesson (2 - 1):** Similarity of Polygons.

**Lesson (2 - 2):** Similarity of Triangles.

**Lesson (2 - 3):** The Relation Between the Area of two Similar Polygons.

**Lesson (2 - 4):** Applications of Similarity in the circle.

## Materials

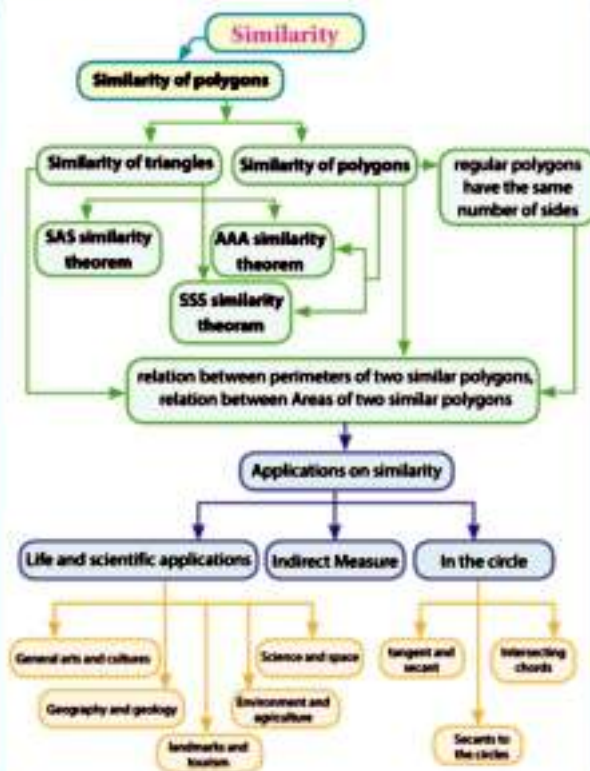
Computer – projector – graphic programs  
– squared paper – Mirror – Measuring tools – Calculator

## Brief History

When construction on a piece of land, we need to do a sketch of the building. It is obvious that you can not do this sketch on a piece of paper to be congruent to the piece of land but we have to work on a small image similar to the original building. It could be done by taking a suitable scale for this minimization and measurements of angles on the drawing. So that they equal to their corresponding angles in the original building. If you think about the shape shown at the top of the page, you will notice that the nature is full of forms containing patterns repeat themselves at various scales, such as the leaves of a tree, flower head of cauliflower, and meanders see coast.

The notice of these repeated patterns led to the emergence of a new architecture for nearly 40 years, interested in self- study of shapes and summary that repeated irregular. It has been called fatafeet architecture or fractal engineering and it will be studied in the next stages of education.

## Chart of the unit





# 2 - 1

## Similarity of Polygons

### You will learn

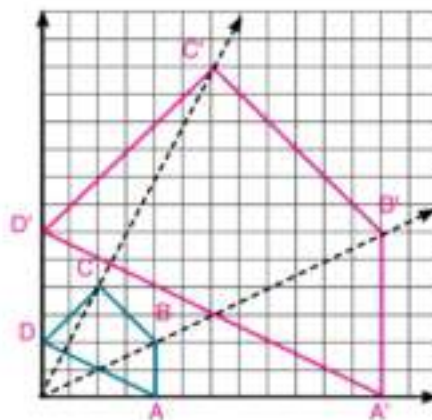
- ▶ Concept of similarity.
- ▶ Similarity of polygons
- ▶ drawing Scale.
- ▶ Golden rectangle and golden ratio.



the figure opposite shows the polygon ABCD, and its image A'B'C'D' by geometric transformation.

- A** Compare the measures of corresponding angles:  
 $\angle A, \angle A' - \angle B, \angle B'$   
 $\angle C, \angle C' - \angle D, \angle D'$   
 What do you deduce?

- B** Find the ratio of the lengths of the corresponding sides lengths  
 $\frac{A'B'}{AB}, \frac{B'C'}{BC}, \frac{C'D'}{CD}, \frac{D'A'}{DA}$ . What do you notice?



### Key-terms

- ▶ Similar Polygons
- ▶ Similar Triangles
- ▶ Corresponding Sides
- ▶ Congruent Angles
- ▶ Regular Polygon
- ▶ Quadrilateral
- ▶ Pentagon
- ▶ Similarity Ratio

When the polygons having the same shape and different in lengths of sides, then they are called similar polygons.

### Similar polygons

**Definition** Two polygons, having the same number of sides, are said to be similar if their corresponding angles are congruent and the lengths of their corresponding sides are proportional.

### Notice that:

- 1-** In the figure shown in "think and discuss" we get:

- A** Corresponding angles are congruent:

$$\angle A' \equiv \angle A, \quad \angle B' \equiv \angle B$$

$$\angle C' \equiv \angle C, \quad \angle D' \equiv \angle D$$

- B** Lengths of corresponding sides are proportional:

$$\frac{A'B'}{AB} = \frac{B'C'}{BC} = \frac{C'D'}{CD} = \frac{D'A'}{DA}$$

Thus, we can say that figure A'B'C'D' is similar to figure ABCD

- 2-** We use the symbol ( $\sim$ ) to denote similarity of two polygons and write them according to the order of their corresponding vertices to make it easy to write the proportion of corresponding sides.

### Learning tools

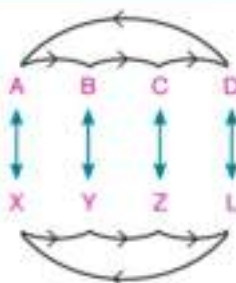
- ▶ Computer
- ▶ projector
- ▶ Graphic programs
- ▶ Squared paper
- ▶ Measuring tools
- ▶ Calculator

If polygon  $ABCD \sim$  polygon  $XYZL$  then:

**A**  $\angle A \equiv \angle X, \angle B \equiv \angle Y, \angle C \equiv \angle Z, \angle D \equiv \angle L$

**B**  $\frac{AB}{XY} = \frac{BC}{YZ} = \frac{CD}{ZL} = \frac{DA}{LX} = K$  (similarity ratio),  $K \neq 0$

The scale factor of similarity of polygon  $ABCD$  to polygon  $XYZL$  equals  $K$ , and scale factor of similarity of polygon  $XYZL$  to polygon  $ABCD$  equals  $\frac{1}{K}$

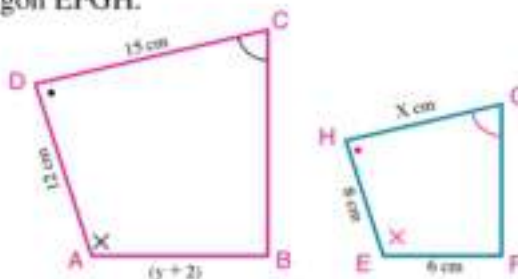


### Example

**1** In the figure opposite: polygon  $ABCD \sim$  polygon  $EFGH$ .

**A** Find the scale factor of similarity of polygon  $ABCD$  to polygon  $EFGH$ .

**B** Find the values of  $x$  and  $y$ .



### Solution

$\therefore$  polygon  $ABCD \sim$  polygon  $EFGH$

then:  $\frac{AB}{EF} = \frac{BC}{FG} = \frac{CD}{GH} = \frac{DA}{HE}$  = similarity ratio,

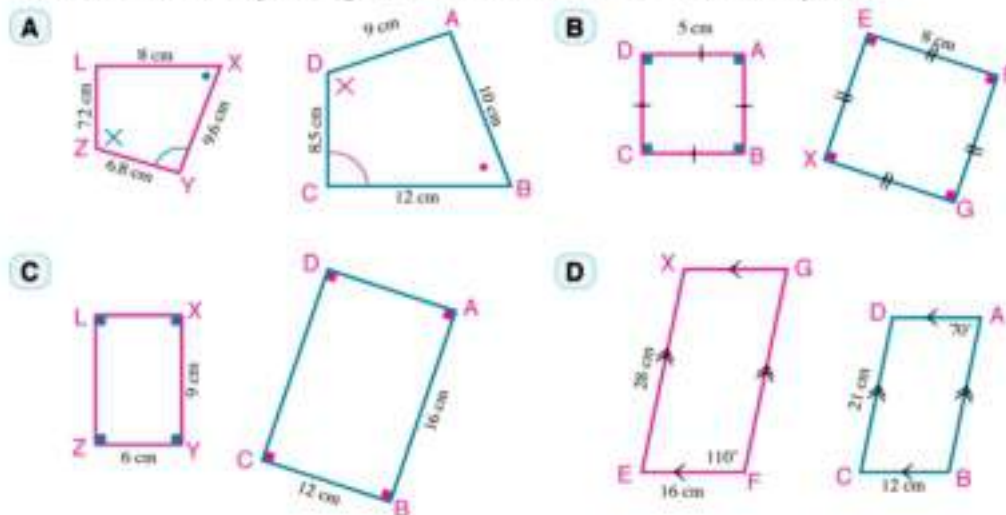
$$\frac{y+2}{6} = \frac{BC}{FG} = \frac{15}{x} = \frac{12}{8}$$

**A** Scale factor =  $\frac{12}{8} = \frac{3}{2}$

**B**  $\frac{15}{x} = \frac{3}{2} \longrightarrow x = 10\text{cm}, \frac{y+2}{6} = \frac{3}{2} \longrightarrow y = 7\text{cm}$

### Try to solve

**1** Show which of the following pairs of polygons are similar. Write similar polygons in order of their corresponding vertices and determine the similarity ratio.



### Think

Are all squares similar?

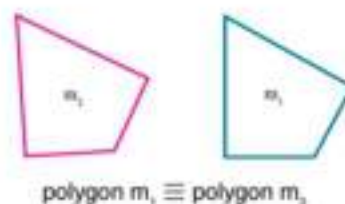
Are all rhombuses similar?

Are all rectangles similar?

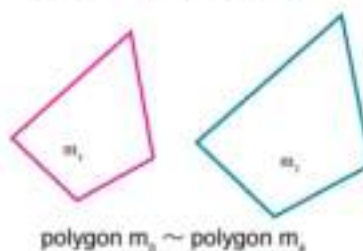
Are all parallelograms similar? Explain your answer.

### Notice that

- 1- For two polygons to be similar, the two conditions must be satisfied simultaneously, and the fulfilment of one of them only is not sufficient.



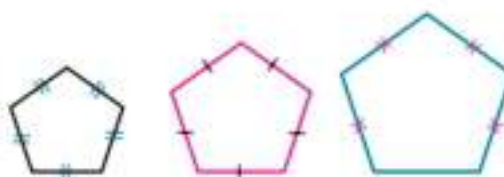
- 2- If two polygons are congruent, then they are similar (polygon  $M_1 \sim$  polygon  $M_2$ ) and the scale factor is then equal 1, and two similar polygons need not be congruent (polygon  $M_3 \not\equiv$  polygon  $M_4$ ) as in the figure opposite.



- 3- If each one of two polygons is similar to a third polygon, then the two polygons are similar  
If polygon  $M_1 \sim$  polygon  $M_3$ ,  
polygon  $M_2 \sim$  polygon  $M_3$   
then: polygon  $M_1 \sim$  polygon  $M_2$

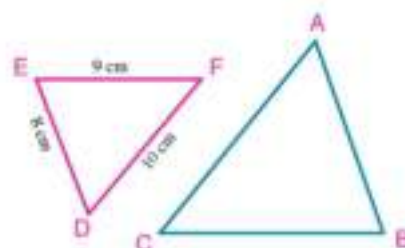


- 4- Any two regular polygons having the same number of sides are similar. Why?



### Example

- 2 In the figure opposite:  $\triangle ABC \sim \triangle DEF$ ,  
 $DE = 8\text{cm}$  ,  $EF = 9\text{cm}$  ,  $FD = 10\text{cm}$   
if the perimeter of  $\triangle ABC = 81\text{cm}$ .  
Find the side lengths of  $\triangle ABC$ .





**Solution**

$$\therefore \triangle ABC \sim \triangle DEF$$

$$\therefore \frac{AB}{DE} = \frac{BC}{EF} = \frac{CA}{FD} = \frac{AB + BC + CA}{AE + EF + FD} = \frac{\text{perimeter of } \triangle ABC}{\text{perimeter of } \triangle DEF} \quad (\text{Proporities of proportion})$$

$$\text{and: } \frac{AB}{8} = \frac{BC}{9} = \frac{CA}{10} = \frac{81}{27}$$

$$\therefore AB = 8 \times \frac{81}{27} = 24\text{cm}, \quad BC = 9 \times 3 = 27, \quad CA = 10 \times 3 = 30\text{cm}$$

**Notice that:**

If polygon  $M_1 \sim$  polygon  $M_2$ , then  $\frac{\text{perimeter of } M_1}{\text{perimeter of } M_2} = \text{Similarity ratio (scale factor)}$

**Try to solve**

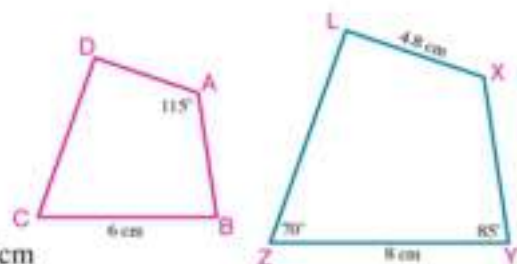
**2 In the figure opposite:**

polygon  $ABCD \sim$  polygon  $XYZL$

**A** Calculate  $m$  ( $\angle XLZ$ ), length of  $\overline{AD}$

**B** If the perimeter of polygon  $ABCD = 19.5\text{cm}$

find the perimeter of polygon  $XYZL$ .



**Similarity ratio of two polygons**

Let  $K$  be the similarity ratio of polygon  $M_1$  to polygon  $M_2$

If:  $K > 1$  then polygon  $M_1$  is an enlargement of polygon  $M_2$

$0 < K < 1$  then polygon  $M_1$  is a shrinking of polygon  $M_2$

$K = 1$  then polygon  $M_1$  is congruent to polygon  $M_2$

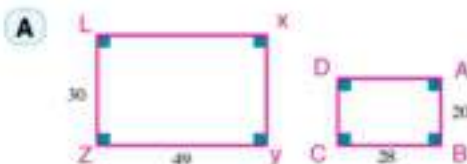
**In general:** you can use the similarity ratio in calculation of the dimensions of similar figures.



## Exercises (2 - 1)

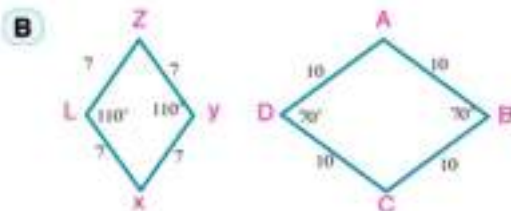


- 1 Show which of the following pairs of polygons are similar, write the similar polygons in order of their corresponding vertices and determine the scale factor of similarity (side lengths are estimated in centimetres).



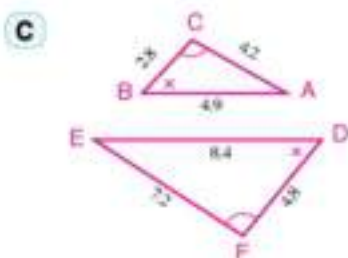
\_\_\_\_\_

\_\_\_\_\_



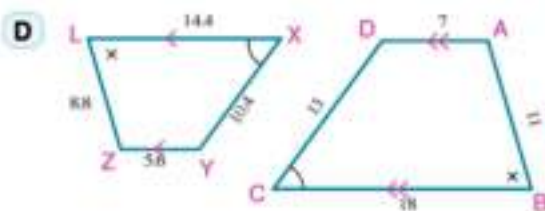
\_\_\_\_\_

\_\_\_\_\_



\_\_\_\_\_

\_\_\_\_\_



\_\_\_\_\_

\_\_\_\_\_

- 2 If polygon ABCD ~ polygon XYZL, complete:

**A**  $\frac{AB}{BC} = \frac{\quad}{YZ}$

**B**  $AB \times ZL = XY \times \quad$

**C**  $\frac{BC + YZ}{YZ} = \frac{\quad + LX}{LX}$

**D**  $\frac{\text{Perimeter of polygon } \quad}{\text{Perimeter of polygon } \quad} = \frac{XY}{AB}$

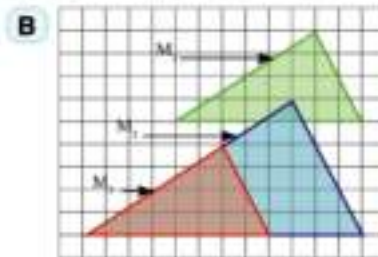
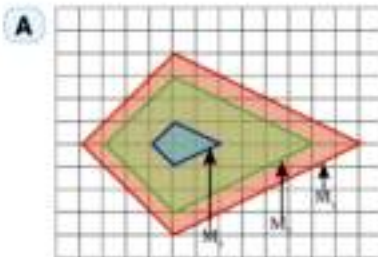
- 3 Polygon ABCD ~ polygon XYZL, If AB = 32cm, BC = 40 cm, XY = 3m - 1 and YZ = 3m + 1, Find the numerical value of m.

- 4 The dimensions of a rectangle are 10cm and 6cm. Find the perimeter and the area of another rectangle similar to it if:

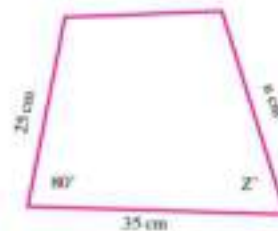
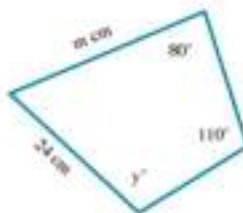
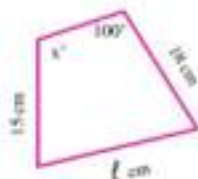
**A** Scale factor equals 3.

**B** Scale factor equals 0.4

- 5 In each of the following figures, polygon  $M_1 \sim$  polygon  $M_2 \sim$  polygon  $M_3$ . Find the scale factor of similarity of each of polygon  $M_1$ , polygon  $M_2$  w.r.t polygon  $M_3$ .



- 6 The following three polygons are similar. Find the numerical value of the symbol used.

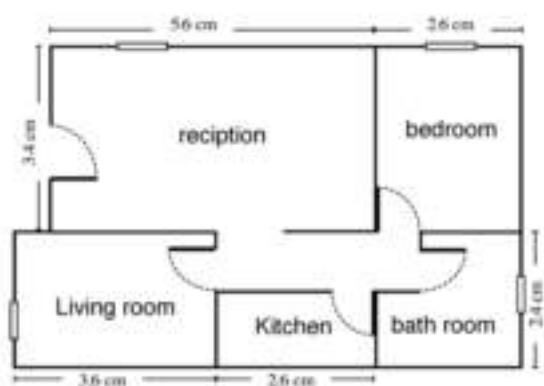


- 7 **Activity:** the length of a golden rectangular box is 16.2cm. Calculate the width of the box to the nearest centimetres.
- 8 Two similar rectangles, the dimensions of the first are 8cm, 12cm and the perimeter of the second is 200cm. Find the length of the second rectangle and its area.

### Activity

- 9 **Architecture Engineering:** the figure opposite shows the floor plan of a house with a drawing scale 1 : 150. Find:

- A The dimensions of the reception.
- B The dimensions of the bedroom.
- C Area of the living room.
- D Area of the floor's house.





# 2 - 2

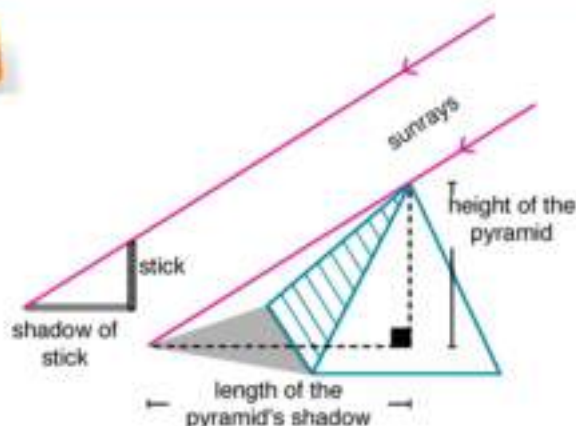
## Similarity of Triangles

### You will learn

- Cases of similarity of triangles.
- Properties of the perpendicular drawn from the vertex of the right angle to the hypotenuse of the right angled triangle



One of the kings of pharaohs asked the mathematician THALES (600BC), to measure the height of the great pyramid, there were no equipments or machineries or a way to find the height of the pyramid directly.



Thales fixed a vertical stick and start to measure the shadow of the stick and compare it with the length of the stick itself, until the length of the shadow of the stick equals the real length of the stick. He measured the length of the pyramid's shadow, it was equal to the height of the pyramid.

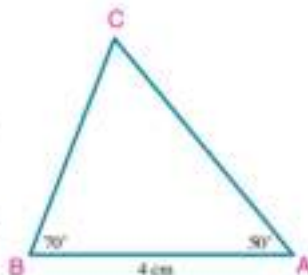
### Key-terms

- Postulate/Axiom

If you are asked to measure the height of a flagpole using a stick and a measuring tape. Do you wait until the length of the stick's shadow equals to the length of the stick or can you measure the flagpole's height at any time in a sunny day? Explain you answer.



- 1- Draw  $\triangle ABC$  in which:  $m(\angle A) = 50^\circ$ ,  $m(\angle B) = 70^\circ$  and  $AB = 4\text{cm}$
- 2- Draw  $\triangle DEF$  in which:  $m(\angle D) = 50^\circ$ ,  $m(\angle E) = 70^\circ$ ,  $DE = 5\text{cm}$



### Learning tools

- Computer
- projector
- Graphic programs
- Squared paper
- Mirror
- Measuring tools
- Calculator

- 3- Find by measuring to the nearest millimetre, the length of:  $\overline{AC}$ ,  $\overline{BC}$ ,  $\overline{DF}$  and  $\overline{EF}$

- 4- Use the calculator to find the ratios  $\frac{AC}{DF} = \frac{BC}{EF} = \frac{AB}{DE}$

Are the ratios equal? What do you deduce about these two triangles? Compare the results you obtained with the results obtained by the other groups and write your comment.

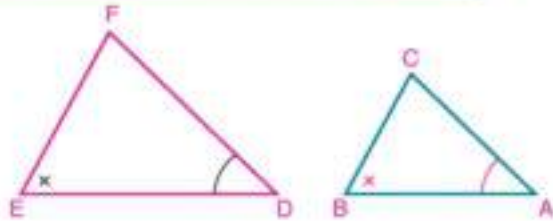
**Postulate**

**AA similarity postulate**

If two angles of one triangle are congruent to their two corresponding angles of another triangle, then the two triangles are similar

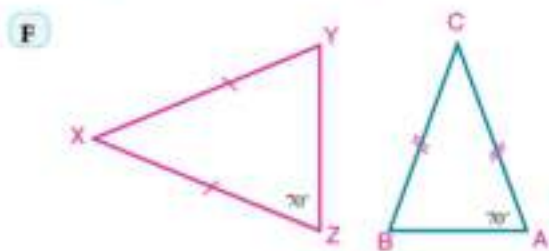
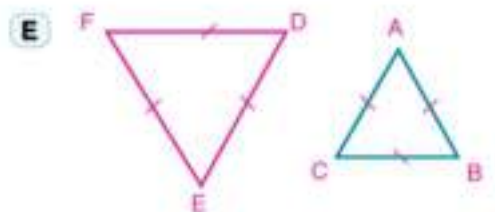
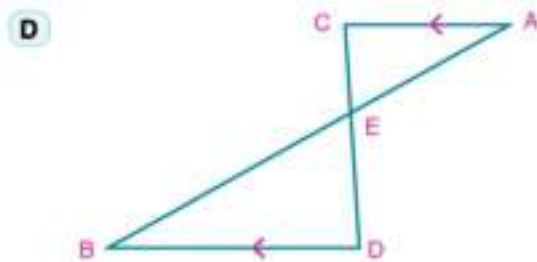
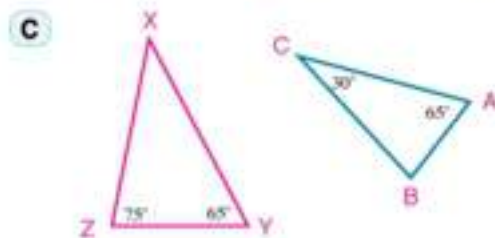
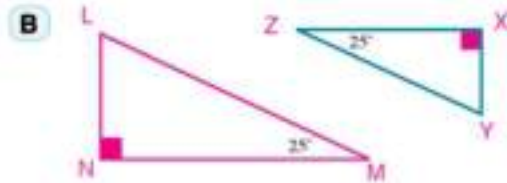
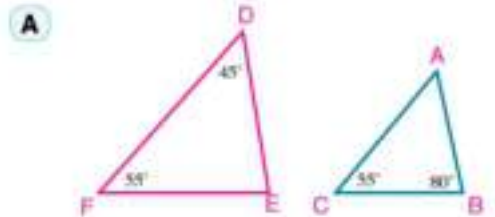
In the figure opposite:

If  $\angle A \equiv \angle D$ ,  $\angle B \equiv \angle E$   
then  $\triangle ABC \sim \triangle DEF$



**Try to solve**

- 1 Show which of the following pairs of triangles are similar. Write the similar triangles in order of their corresponding vertices.



**Notice that**

- Any two equilateral triangles are similar as in **(E)**
- Two isosceles triangles are similar if the measure of one of the two base angles in one of them is equal to the measure of one of the two base angles in the other as in **(F)**, or if the measures of their vertex angles are equal.
- Two right triangles are similar if the measure of one of the two acute angles in one of them is equal to the measure of one of the two acute angles in the other as in **(B)**.

### Example

- 1 In the triangle ABC,  $D \in \overline{AB}$  and  $E \in \overline{AC}$  where  $\overline{DE} \parallel \overline{BC}$ .

$BD = 1.2\text{cm}$ ,  $AE = 3\text{cm}$ ,  $AC = 4\text{cm}$  and  $DE = 4.2\text{cm}$ .

A Prove that  $\triangle ADE \sim \triangle ABC$

B Find the length of:  $\overline{AD}$  and  $\overline{BC}$

### Solution

A  $\because \overline{DE} \parallel \overline{BC}$  and  $\overleftrightarrow{AB}$  is a transversal to both of them.

$$\therefore \angle ADE \equiv \angle ABC$$

in the two triangles ADE, ABC

$$\therefore \angle ADE \equiv \angle ABC$$

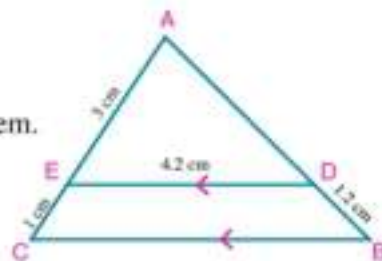
$$\angle DAE \equiv \angle BAC$$

$$\therefore \triangle ADE \sim \triangle ABC$$

(proved)

(common angle)

(postulate)



B  $\because \triangle ADE \sim \triangle ABC$

$$\therefore \frac{AD}{AB} = \frac{AE}{AC} = \frac{DE}{BC} \text{ then,}$$

$$\frac{AD}{AD + 1.2} = \frac{3}{4} = \frac{4.2}{BC}$$

$$4AD = 3(AD + 1.2)$$

$$= 3AD + 3.6$$

$$AD = 3.6\text{cm}$$

$$3BC = 4 \times 4.2$$

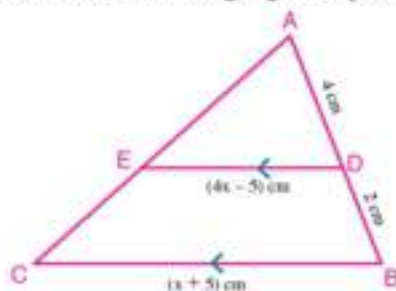
$$= \frac{4 \times 4.2}{3}$$

$$BC = 5.6\text{cm}$$

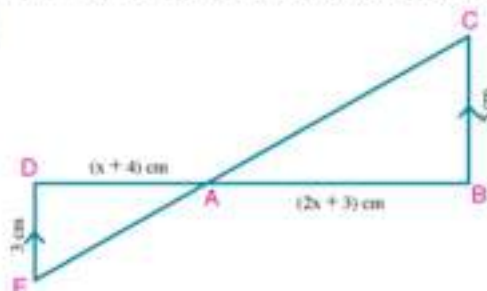
### Try to solve

- 2 In each of the following figures, prove that:  $\triangle ABC \sim \triangle ADE$ , then find the value of  $x$ .

A



B

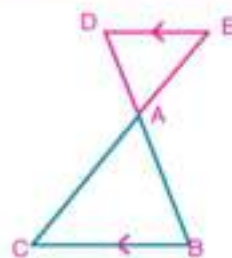
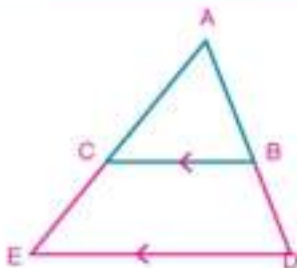
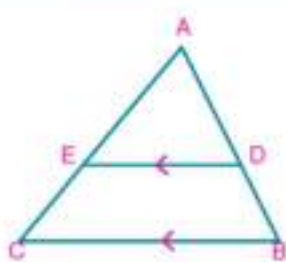


### Important corollaries

Corollary 1

If a line is drawn parallel to one side of a triangle and intersects the other two sides or the lines containing them, then the resulting triangle is similar to the original triangle.

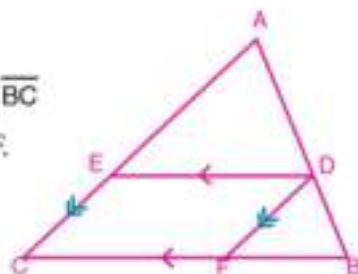




If  $\overrightarrow{DE} \parallel \overrightarrow{BC}$  and intersects  $\overrightarrow{AB}$  and  $\overrightarrow{AC}$  at D, and E respectively, as in the three previous figures:  
Then:  $\triangle ADE \sim \triangle ABC$ .

### Example

- 2 In the figure opposite: ABC is a triangle,  $D \in \overline{AB}$ ,  $\overrightarrow{DE} \parallel \overrightarrow{BC}$  and intersects  $\overline{AC}$  at E,  $\overrightarrow{DF} \parallel \overrightarrow{AC}$  and intersects  $\overline{BC}$  at F. Prove that:  $\triangle ADE \sim \triangle DBF$



### Solution

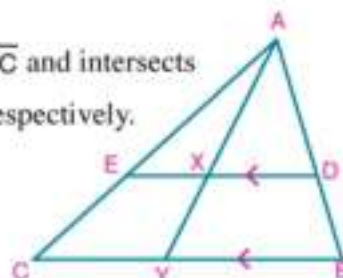
- $\therefore \overrightarrow{DE} \parallel \overrightarrow{BC} \quad \therefore \triangle ADE \sim \triangle ABC \quad (1)$   
 $\therefore \overrightarrow{DF} \parallel \overrightarrow{AC} \quad \therefore \triangle DBF \sim \triangle ABC \quad (2)$   
 from (1) and (2):  $\triangle ADE \sim \triangle DBF \quad (\text{Q.E.D.})$

### Try to solve

- 3 In the figure opposite: ABC is a triangle,  $D \in \overline{AB}$ ,  $\overrightarrow{DE} \parallel \overrightarrow{BC}$  and intersects  $\overline{AC}$  at E,  $\overrightarrow{AX}$  is drawn to intersect  $\overline{DE}$  and  $\overline{BC}$  at X and Y respectively.

A State three pairs of similar triangles.

B prove that:  $\frac{DX}{BY} = \frac{XE}{YC} = \frac{DE}{BC}$ .



### Corollary 2

In any right triangle, the altitude to the hypotenuse separates the triangle into two triangles which are similar to each other and to the original triangle

In the figure opposite: ABC is a right angled triangle at A,  $\overline{AD} \perp \overline{BC}$

n  $\triangle DBA$  and  $\triangle ABC$

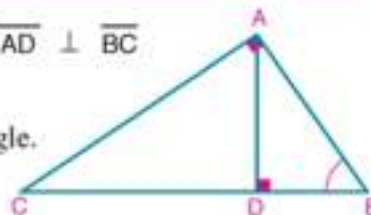
$m(\angle ADB) = m(\angle CAB) = 90^\circ$  and  $\angle B$  is a common angle.

$\therefore \triangle DBA \sim \triangle ABC \quad (\text{postulate}) \quad (1)$

Similarly  $\triangle DAC \sim \triangle ABC \quad (2)$

$\therefore$  If each one of two triangles is similar to a third triangle, then the two triangles are similar.

$\therefore \triangle DBA \sim \triangle DAC \sim \triangle ABC$



### Example

- 3 ABC is a right angled triangle at A,  $\overline{AD} \perp \overline{BC}$ . Prove that DA is a mean proportional to DB and DC.

### Solution

**Given:**  $\triangle ABC$ :  $m(\angle A) = 90^\circ$ ,  $\overline{AD} \perp \overline{BC}$ .

**R.T.P:** prove that  $(DA)^2 = DB \times DC$ .

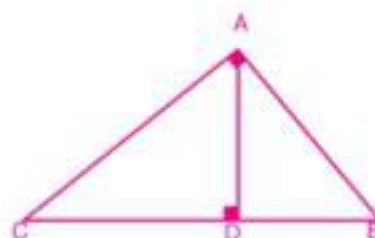
**Proof:** In  $\triangle ABC$

$$\because m(\angle A) = 90^\circ, \overline{AD} \perp \overline{BC}$$

$$\therefore \triangle DBA \sim \triangle DAC$$

(Corollary)

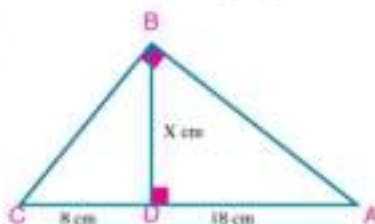
$$\text{and } \frac{DA}{DC} = \frac{DB}{DA} \quad \text{i.e. } (DA)^2 = DB \times DC$$



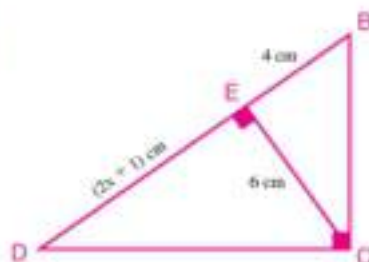
### Try to solve

- 4 In each of the following figures, Find the numerical value of x:

A



B



### Example

- 4 In the figure opposite: ABC is a right angled triangle at A,  $\overline{AD} \perp \overline{BC}$  prove that:

A  $(AB)^2 = BC \times BD$

B  $(AC)^2 = CB \times CD$

### Solution

In  $\triangle ABC$ :

$$\because m(\angle A) = 90^\circ, \overline{AD} \perp \overline{BC}$$

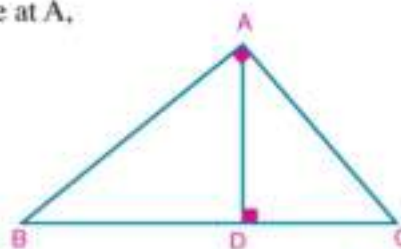
$$\therefore \triangle ABD \sim \triangle CBA \quad (\text{corollary})$$

$$\therefore \frac{AB}{CB} = \frac{BD}{BA} \quad , (AB)^2 = BD \times BC$$

$$, \triangle ACD \sim \triangle BCA$$

(corollary)

$$\therefore \frac{AC}{BC} = \frac{CD}{CA} \quad , (AC)^2 = CB \times CD$$

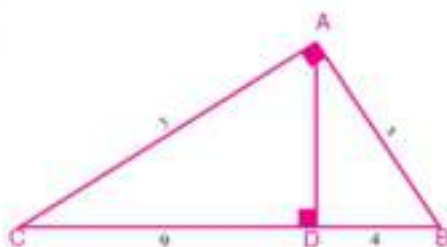


The results you obtained in examples 3, 4 are considered a proof of Euclid theorem which you studied in the preparatory stage

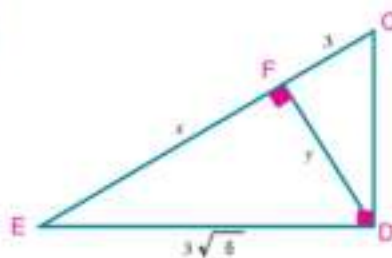
### Try to solve

- 5 Find the numerical values of  $x, y$  in the simplest form (lengths are measured in centimetres)

A



B



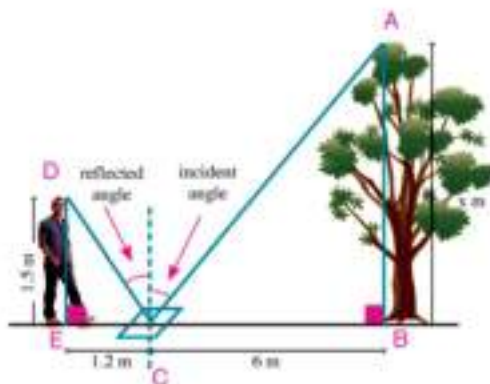
### Indirect measurement

It is difficult in some cases to measure a distance or height directly, in this case, you can use similarity of triangle to find this measurement by an indirect way.

One of the ways, you can use the property of reflection of light in a mirror, as in the following example.

### Example

- 5 **Physics:** yousef wanted to know the height of a tree. He put a mirror 6 metres from the base of the tree, then he moved back until he can see the top of the tree in the middle of the mirror. At this point, he moved a way from the mirror 1.2m and his eyes was at 1.5m from the ground. If his foot, mirror, and the base of the tree were on the same straight line. Find the height of the tree. Given that measure of incident angle = measure of reflected angle



### Solution

Let the height of the tree be  $x$  metres and measure of the incident angle be  $\theta^\circ$

$\therefore$  Measure of the reflected angle =  $\theta^\circ$

In the two triangles  $ABC$  and  $DEC$

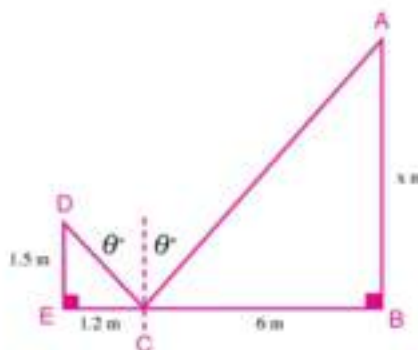
$$m(\angle B) = m(\angle E) = 90^\circ$$

$$m(\angle ACB) = m(\angle DCE) = (90 - \theta)^\circ$$

$$\therefore \triangle ABC \sim \triangle DEC \quad \therefore \frac{AB}{DE} = \frac{BC}{EC}$$

$$\therefore \frac{x}{1.5} = \frac{6}{1.2} \quad \therefore x = 7.5 \text{ m}$$

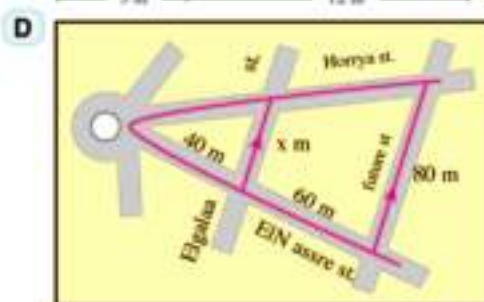
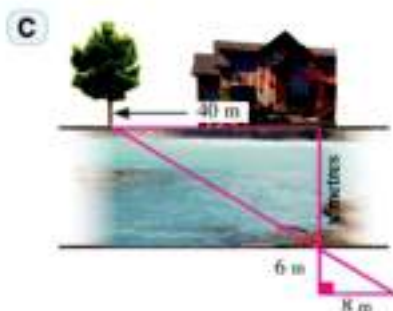
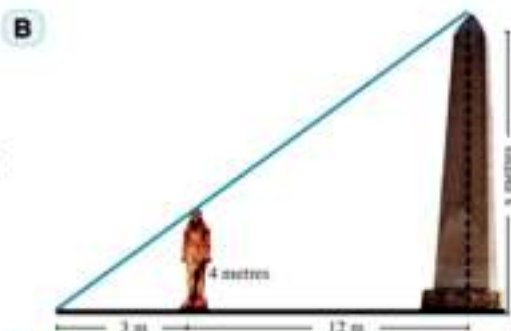
i.e. the height of the tree equals 7.5 metres.





### Try to solve

6 Find the distance  $x$  in each of the following cases:



### theorem 1

#### SSS Similarity theorem

If the side lengths of two triangles are in proportion, then the two triangles are similar.

**Given:** In  $\triangle ABC$  and  $\triangle DEF$ :  $\frac{AB}{DE} = \frac{BC}{EF} = \frac{CA}{FD}$

**R.t.p.:**  $\triangle ABC \sim \triangle DEF$

**Proof:** take  $X \in \overline{AB}$  where  $AX = DE$ ,

Draw  $\overline{XY} \parallel \overline{BC}$  and intersects  $\overline{AC}$  at  $Y$ .

$\therefore \overline{XY} \parallel \overline{BC}$

$\therefore \triangle ABC \sim \triangle AXY$

$\therefore \frac{AB}{AX} = \frac{BC}{XY} = \frac{CA}{YA}$

$\therefore AX = DE$

$\therefore \frac{AB}{DE} = \frac{BC}{XY} = \frac{CA}{YA}$

$\therefore \frac{AB}{DE} = \frac{BC}{EF} = \frac{CA}{FD}$

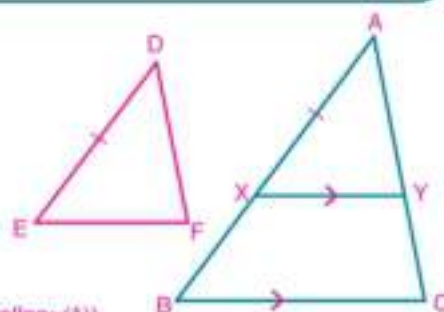
from (1), (2) we deduce that:  $XY = EF$ ,  $YA = FD$

and  $\triangle AXY \equiv \triangle DEF$

$\therefore \triangle DEF \sim \triangle AXY$

$\therefore \triangle ABC \sim \triangle AXY$

$\therefore \triangle ABC \sim \triangle DEF$



(Corollary (1))

(Construction)

(1)

(given) (2)

(SSS congruency theorem)

(Proved)

(Q.E.D.)

**Example**

- 6 In the figure opposite: B, Y and C are collinear. Prove that:

- A  $\triangle ABC \sim \triangle XBY$   
 B  $\overrightarrow{BC}$  bisects  $\angle ABX$

**Solution**

- A In the two triangles ABC and XBY, we get:

$$\frac{AB}{XB} = \frac{12}{9} = \frac{4}{3} \quad , \quad \frac{BC}{BY} = \frac{18+6}{18} = \frac{4}{3}$$

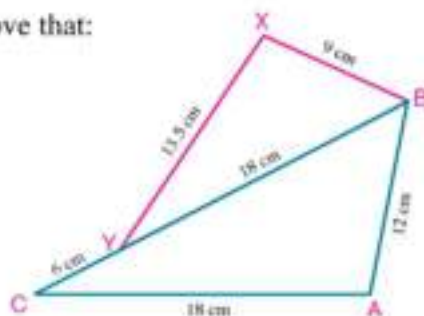
$$\frac{AC}{XY} = \frac{18}{13.5} = \frac{4}{3}$$

$$\therefore \frac{AC}{XY} = \frac{BC}{BY} = \frac{AB}{XB} \quad \text{i.e. Corresponding sides are proportional}$$

$$\therefore \triangle ABC \sim \triangle XBY$$

- B  $\therefore \triangle ABC \sim \triangle XBY$   
 i.e.:  $\overrightarrow{BC}$  bisects  $\angle ABX$

$$\therefore m(\angle ABC) = m(\angle XBY)$$



- 7 In the figure opposite:  $\overrightarrow{AB} \cap \overrightarrow{CD} = \{E\}$  where  $\frac{AE}{CE} = \frac{BE}{DE}$ ,  $\frac{AC}{CE} = \frac{BD}{DE}$  prove that  $\overrightarrow{AC} \parallel \overrightarrow{BD}$

**Solution**

$$\therefore \frac{AE}{CE} = \frac{BE}{DE} \quad \therefore \frac{AE}{BE} = \frac{CE}{DE}$$

(Properties of proportion) (1)

$$\therefore \frac{AC}{CE} = \frac{BD}{DE} \quad \therefore \frac{AC}{BD} = \frac{CE}{DE}$$

(Properties of proportion) (2)

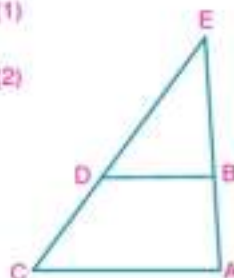
$$\text{From (1), (2) we get: } \frac{AE}{BE} = \frac{CE}{DE} = \frac{CA}{DB}$$

$$\text{i.e. } \triangle AEC \sim \triangle BED$$

$$\therefore m(\angle ACE) = m(\angle BDE)$$

They are corresponding w.r. to the transversal  $\overleftrightarrow{CE}$

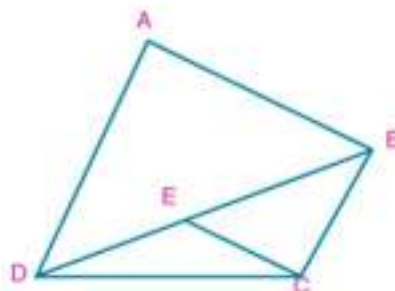
$$\therefore \overrightarrow{AC} \parallel \overrightarrow{BD}$$


**Try to solve**

- 7 ABCD is a quadrilateral,  $E \in \overline{BD}$  where:

$$\frac{AB}{DA} = \frac{CE}{BC}, \quad \frac{BD}{DA} = \frac{EB}{BC} \quad \text{Prove that:}$$

- A  $\overline{AD} \parallel \overline{BC}$       B  $\overline{AB} \parallel \overline{CE}$



**theorem 2**

**SAS Similarity theorem**

If an angle of one triangle is congruent to an angle of another triangle and lengths of the sides including those angles are in proportion, then the triangles are similar

**Given:**  $\angle A \equiv \angle D$ ,  $\frac{AB}{DE} = \frac{AC}{DF}$

**R.t.p.:**  $\triangle ABC \sim \triangle DEF$

**Proof:** take  $X \in \overline{AB}$  where  $AX = DE$

draw  $\overline{XY} \parallel \overline{BC}$

and intersect  $\overline{AC}$  at  $Y$

$\therefore \overline{XY} \parallel \overline{BC} \quad \therefore \triangle ABC \sim \triangle AXY$  (Corollary) (1)

$$\therefore \frac{AB}{AX} = \frac{AC}{AY}$$

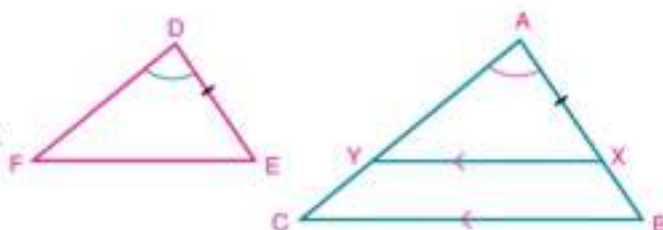
$\therefore \frac{AB}{DE} = \frac{AC}{EF}$  (given),  $AX = DE$  (construction)

$\therefore \frac{AB}{AX} = \frac{AC}{EF}$ ,  $AY = DF$

$\therefore \triangle AXY \equiv \triangle DEF$  (SAS congruency theorem)

$\triangle AXY \sim \triangle DEF$  (2)

from (1), (2) we get:  $\triangle ABC \sim \triangle DEF$  Q.E.D.



**Example**

**8** ABC is a triangle  $AB = 8\text{cm}$ ,  $AC = 10\text{cm}$ ,  $BC = 12\text{cm}$ ,  $E \in \overline{AB}$  where  $AE = 2\text{cm}$ ,  $D \in \overline{BC}$  where  $BD = 4\text{cm}$ .

**A** Prove that  $\triangle BDE \sim \triangle BAC$  and deduce the length of  $\overline{DE}$ .

**B** Prove that figure ACDE is a cyclic quadrilateral.

**Solution**

$\therefore AB = 8\text{cm}$ ,  $AE = 2\text{cm} \quad \therefore BE = 6\text{cm}$

**A** In  $\triangle BDE$ ,  $BAC$ ;

$\angle DBE \equiv \angle ABC$  (1)

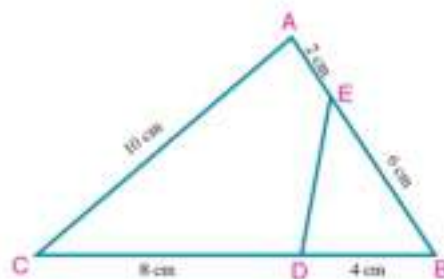
$$\therefore \frac{BD}{BA} = \frac{4}{8} = \frac{1}{2} \quad , \quad \frac{BE}{BC} = \frac{6}{12} = \frac{1}{2}$$

$$\therefore \frac{BD}{BA} = \frac{BE}{BC} \quad (2)$$

from (1), (2)  $\therefore \triangle BDE \sim \triangle BAC$  (theorem)

from similarity  $\frac{DE}{AC} = \frac{1}{2}$

$$\therefore DE = \frac{1}{2} AC \quad , \quad DE = \frac{1}{2} \times 10 = 5\text{cm}$$

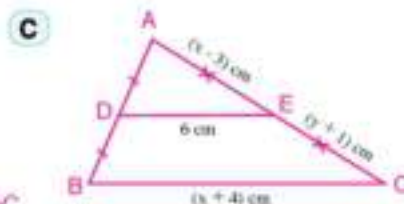
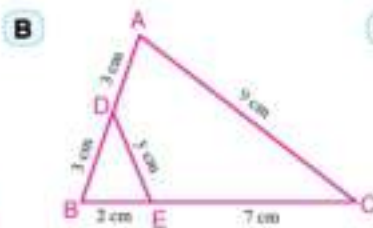
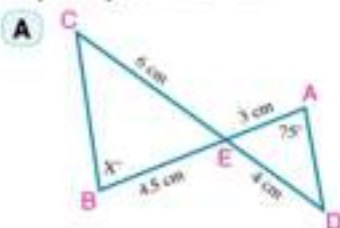




- B** From similarity also  $\angle BDE \equiv \angle BAC \quad \therefore m(\angle BDE) = m(\angle BAC)$   
 $\therefore \angle BDE$  is an exterior angle of the quadrilateral ACDE  
 $\therefore$  the figure ACDE is a cyclic quadrilateral.

### Try to solve

- 8** In each of the following figures, find the numerical value of the symbol used in measure. Explain your answer.



### Example

- 9** ABC is a triangle D  $\in \overline{BC}$  where  $(AC)^2 = CD \times CB$ . Prove that:  $\triangle ACD \sim \triangle BCA$

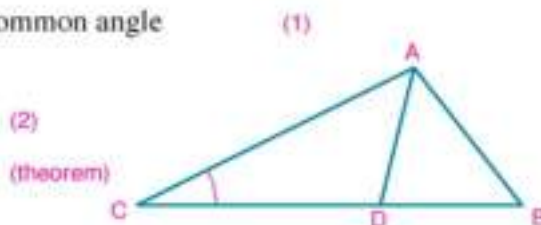
### Solution

In the two triangles ABC, DAC,  $\angle C$  is a common angle

$$\therefore (AC)^2 = CE \times CB$$

$$\therefore \frac{AC}{CB} = \frac{CD}{AC}$$

from (1), (2) we get  $\triangle ACD \sim \triangle BCA$



### Try to solve

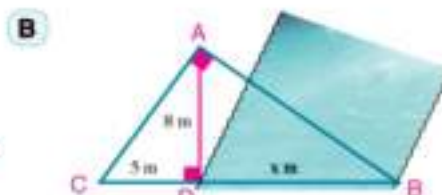
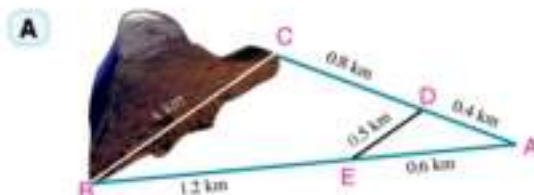
- 9** ABC, DEF are two similar triangles, X is the midpoint of  $\overline{BC}$ , Y is the midpoint of  $\overline{EF}$ . Prove that:

**A**  $\triangle ABX \sim \triangle DEY$

**B**  $AX \times DE = AB \times DY$

### Check your understanding

In each of the following figures, find the value of X.



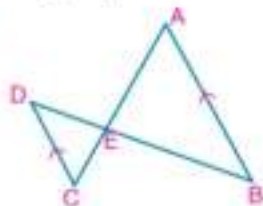


## Exercises (2 - 2)

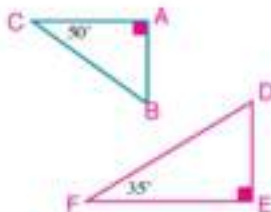


- 1 State which of the following cases, the two triangles are similar. In case of similarity, state why they are similar?

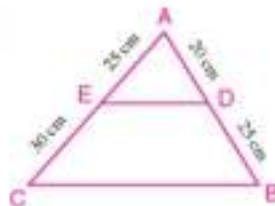
A



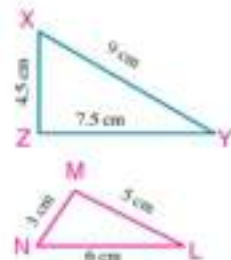
B



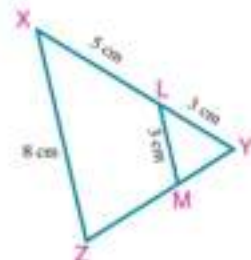
C



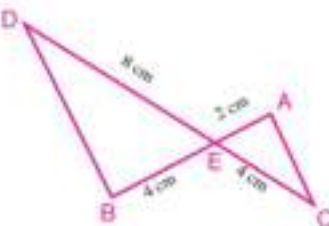
D



E

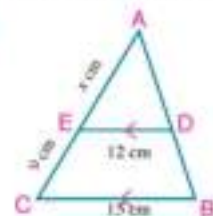


F

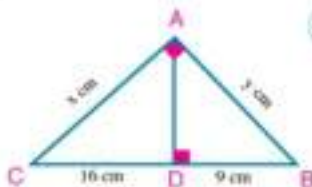


- 2 Find the value of the symbol used:

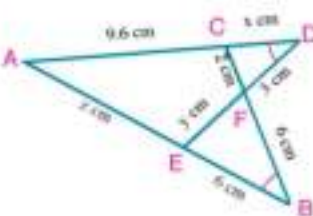
A



B



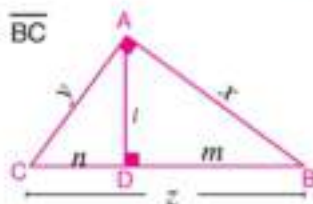
C



- 3 In the figure opposite: ABC is a right angled triangle,  $\overline{AE} \perp \overline{BC}$

First: complete:  $\triangle ABC \sim \triangle \underline{\hspace{1cm}} \sim \triangle \underline{\hspace{1cm}}$

Second: If  $x, y, z, l, m$  and  $n$  are the lengths of the straight segments in centimetres, then complete the following proportions:



A

$$\frac{x}{z} = \frac{m}{\underline{\hspace{1cm}}}$$

B

$$\frac{x}{z} = \frac{l}{\underline{\hspace{1cm}}}$$

C

$$\frac{m}{l} = \frac{x}{\underline{\hspace{1cm}}}$$

D

$$\frac{l}{x} = \frac{\underline{\hspace{1cm}}}{y}$$

E

$$\frac{x}{\underline{\hspace{1cm}}} = \frac{\underline{\hspace{1cm}}}{x}$$

F

$$\frac{\underline{\hspace{1cm}}}{y} = \frac{y}{\underline{\hspace{1cm}}}$$

G

$$\frac{l}{x} = \frac{\underline{\hspace{1cm}}}{z}$$

H

$$\frac{l}{x} = \frac{\underline{\hspace{1cm}}}{y}$$

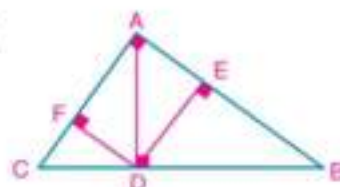
- 4  $\overline{AB}$  and  $\overline{DC}$  are two chords in a circle,  $\overline{AB} \cap \overline{DC} = \{E\}$ , where E lies outside the circle,  $AB = 4\text{cm}$ ,  $DC = 7\text{cm}$  and  $BE = 6\text{cm}$ . prove that  $\triangle ADE \sim \triangle CBE$ , then find the length of  $\overline{CE}$
- 5 ABC, and DEF are two similar triangles,  $\overline{AX} \perp \overline{BC}$  to intersect it at X,  $\overline{DY} \perp \overline{EF}$  and intersects it at Y. Prove that  $BX \times YF = CX \times YE$

- 6 In  $\triangle ABC$ ,  $AC < AB$ ,  $M \in \overline{AC}$  where  $m(\angle ABM) = m(\angle C)$ .  
Prove that  $(AB)^2 = AM \times AC$ .
- 7  $ABC$  is a right angled triangle at  $A$ ,  $\overrightarrow{AD} \perp \overline{BC}$  to intersect it at  $D$ . if  $\frac{BD}{DC} = \frac{1}{2}$ ,  
 $AD = 6\sqrt{2}$  cm. Find the length of  $\overline{BD}$ ,  $\overline{AB}$  and  $\overline{AC}$ .

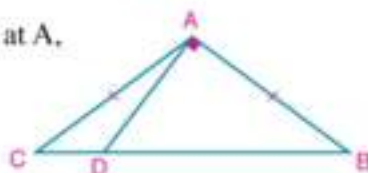
- 8 In the figure opposite:  $ABC$  is a right angled triangle at  $A$ ,  
 $\overline{AD} \perp \overline{BC}$ ,  $\overline{DE} \perp \overline{AB}$ ,  $\overline{DF} \perp \overline{AC}$ . Prove that:

A  $\triangle ADE \sim \triangle CDF$

B Area of rectangle  $AEDF = \sqrt{AE \times EB \times AF \times FC}$



- 9 In the figure opposite:  $ABC$  is an obtuse angled triangle at  $A$ ,  
 $AB = AC$ ,  $\overrightarrow{AD} \perp \overline{AB}$  and intersects  $\overline{BC}$  at  $D$ .  
Prove that:  $2(AB)^2 = BD \times BC$



- 10 The two sets A and B represent the side lengths of different triangles in centimetres. In front of each triangle from set A Write the triangle similar to it from set B

Set (A)

1	6	6	6
2	5	7	11
3	5	8	10
4	7	8	12
5	16	27	28

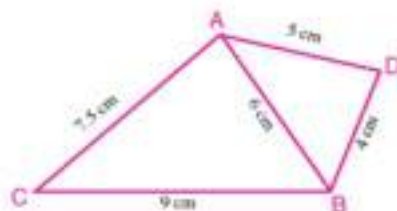
Set (B)

A	2.5	4	5
B	8	13.5	14
C	25	35	55
D	11	11	11
E	3.5	4	6
F	8	6	10
G	32	54	42

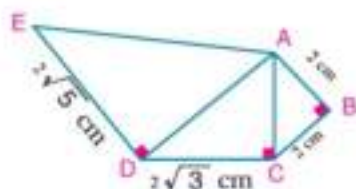
- 11 In the figure opposite:  $ABC$  is a triangle in which  $AB = 6$  cm,  
 $BC = 9$  cm and  $AC = 7.5$  cm.  
 $D$  is a point outside the triangle  $ABC$   
where  $DB = 4$  cm and  $DE = 5$  cm. Prove that:

A  $\triangle ABC \sim \triangle DBA$

B  $\overrightarrow{BA}$  bisects  $\angle DBC$



- 12 In the figure opposite, Complete:  
 $\triangle ABC \sim \triangle$  \_\_\_\_\_  
and the scale factor = \_\_\_\_\_





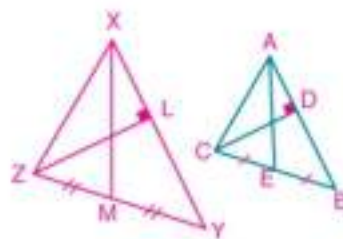
- 13 In the figure opposite:  $\triangle ABC \sim \triangle XYZ$ ,

E is the mid point of  $\overline{BC}$ , M is the mid point of  $\overline{YZ}$ ,

$\overline{CD} \perp \overline{AB}$  and  $\overline{ZL} \perp \overline{XY}$ , prove that:

A  $\triangle AEC \sim \triangle XMZ$

B  $\frac{CD}{ZL} = \frac{AE}{XM}$



- 14 ABC and XYZ are two similar triangles, where,  $AB < AC$ ,  $XY < XZ$ .

E and L are the mid point of  $\overline{BC}$  and  $\overline{YZ}$  respectively,  $\overline{AF} \perp \overline{BC}$  and  $\overline{XM} \perp \overline{YZ}$

Prove that  $\triangle AEF \sim \triangle XLM$

- 15 ABC is a triangle, D  $\in$   $\overline{BC}$  where  $(AD)^2 = BD \times DC$ ,  $BA \times AD = BD \times AC$ . Prove that:

A  $\triangle ABD \sim \triangle CAD$

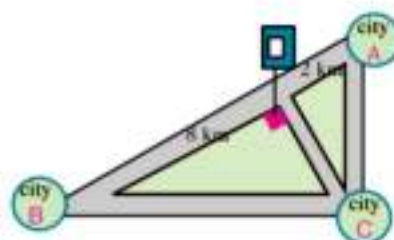
B  $\overline{AD} \perp \overline{BC}$

C  $m(\angle BAC) = 90^\circ$

- 16 The diagram opposite shows the location of a gas station. It is required to build it on a high way at the intersection of a road that leads to city C and perpendicular to the high way between the two cities A and B.

A How far is the gas station from city C?

B What is the distance from B to C?



### Activity

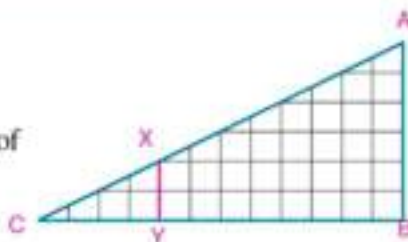
Use Google Earth program to calculate the shortest distance between the governorates of Egypt

## The Relation Between the Areas of two Similar Polygons

# 2 - 3



On the squared paper, draw each of the two triangles ABC and XYZ.



- 1- Show why:  
 $\triangle XYZ \sim \triangle ABC$ . Find the similarity ratio.
- 2- Calculate the ratio of area of the triangle XYZ to the area of the original triangle ABC
- 3- Determine another point as  $D \in \overline{AC}$ , then draw  $\overline{DD'} \parallel \overline{AB}$  and intersects  $\overline{BC}$  at  $D'$  to get the triangle  $DD'C$ . Is  $\triangle DD'C \sim \triangle XYZ$ ?
- 4- Complete the following table:

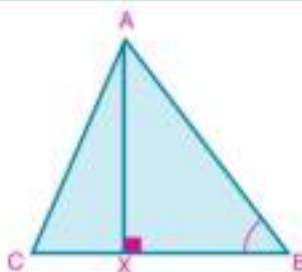
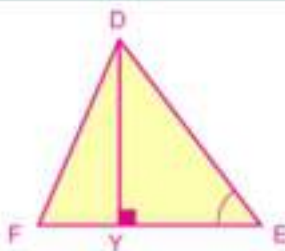
The triangles	similarity ratio	Area of the first triangle	Area of the second triangle	Ratio between their areas
$\triangle XYZ \sim \triangle ABC$	$\frac{1}{3}$	4	36	$\frac{4}{36} = \frac{1}{9}$
$\triangle DD'C \sim \triangle ABC$				
$\triangle XYZ \sim \triangle DD'C$				

- 5- What does it mean by the ratios you obtained comparing with the similarity ratio (scale factor)?

### First: the ratio of Areas of two similar triangles:

**Theorem 3**

Ratio of the areas of the surfaces of two similar triangles equals the square of the ratio of the lengths of any two corresponding sides of the two triangles



### You will learn

- ✦ The relation between the perimeters of two similar polygons and similarity ratio (scale factor)
- ✦ The relation between areas of two similar polygons and similarity ratio.

### Key-term

- ✦ Perimeter
- ✦ Area
- ✦ Area of a Polygon
- ✦ Corresponding Sides

### learning tools

- ✦ Computer
- ✦ Projector
- ✦ Graphic program
- ✦ squared paper
- ✦ Calculator

**Given:**  $\triangle ABC \sim \triangle DEF$

**R.t.p.:**  $\frac{a(\triangle ABC)}{a(\triangle DEF)} = \left(\frac{AB}{DE}\right)^2 = \left(\frac{BC}{EF}\right)^2 = \left(\frac{CA}{FD}\right)^2$

**Proof:** Draw  $\overrightarrow{AX} \perp \overrightarrow{BC}$  where  $\overrightarrow{AX} \cap \overrightarrow{BC} = \{X\}$ ,

$\overrightarrow{DY} \perp \overrightarrow{EF}$  where  $\overrightarrow{DY} \cap \overrightarrow{EF} = \{Y\}$

$\therefore \triangle ABC \sim \triangle DEF$

$\therefore m(\angle B) = m(\angle E), \frac{AB}{DE} = \frac{BC}{EF} = \frac{CA}{FD}$  (1)

In the two triangles ABX, DEY:

$m(\angle X) = m(\angle Y) = 90^\circ, m(\angle B) = m(\angle E)$

$\therefore \triangle ABX \sim \triangle DEY$  (A A similarity postulate)

$\therefore \frac{AB}{DE} = \frac{AX}{DY}$  (2)

$$\frac{a(\triangle ABC)}{a(\triangle DEF)} = \frac{\frac{1}{2} BC \times AX}{\frac{1}{2} EF \times DY} = \frac{BC}{EF} \times \frac{AX}{DY}$$

By substituting from (1), (2), we get:

$$\frac{a(\triangle ABC)}{a(\triangle DEF)} = \frac{AB}{DE} \times \frac{AB}{DE} = \left(\frac{AB}{DE}\right)^2 = \left(\frac{BC}{EF}\right)^2 = \left(\frac{CA}{FE}\right)^2$$

Q.E.D.

**Notice that:**  $\frac{a(\triangle ABC)}{a(\triangle DEF)} = \left(\frac{AB}{DE}\right)^2, \frac{AB}{DE} = \frac{AX}{DY}$

then:  $\frac{a(\triangle ABC)}{a(\triangle DEF)} = \left(\frac{AX}{DY}\right)^2$

**i.e. the ratio of the areas of the surfaces of two similar triangles equals the square of the ratio the lengths of any two corresponding altitudes of the two triangles.**

### Critical thinking:

- 1-** If  $\triangle ABC \sim \triangle DEF$ , L is the midpoint of  $\overline{BC}$ , M is the midpoint of  $\overline{EF}$ .

Is  $\frac{a(\triangle ABC)}{a(\triangle DEF)} = \left(\frac{AL}{DM}\right)^2$ ?

Explain your answer, and write your deduction.

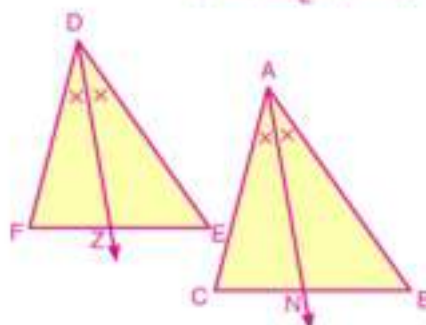
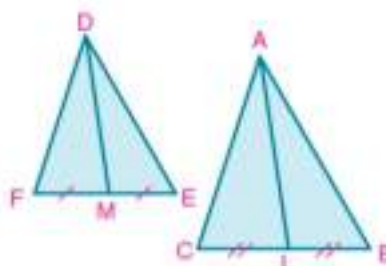
- 2-** If  $\triangle ABC \sim \triangle DEF$ ,

$\overrightarrow{AN}$  bisects  $\angle A$  and intersects  $\overline{BC}$  at N,

$\overrightarrow{DZ}$  bisects  $\angle D$  and intersects  $\overline{EF}$  at Z.

Is  $\frac{a(\triangle ABC)}{a(\triangle DEF)} = \left(\frac{AN}{DZ}\right)^2$ ?

Explain your answer and write your deduction.





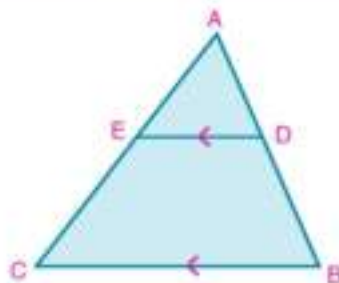
**Example**

- 1 In the figure opposite:  $ABC$  is a triangle  $D \in \overline{AB}$

where  $\frac{AD}{DB} = \frac{3}{4}$ ,  $\overline{DE} \parallel \overline{BC}$  and intersects  $\overline{AC}$  at  $E$ .

if the area of  $\triangle ABC = 784\text{cm}^2$ , find:

- A area of  $\triangle ADE$ . B area of trapezium  $DBCE$ .



**Solution**

In  $\triangle ABC$ :  $\therefore \overline{DE} \parallel \overline{BC}$

$$\therefore \triangle ADE \sim \triangle ABC$$

(Corollary)

$$\therefore \frac{a(\triangle ADE)}{a(\triangle ABC)} = \left(\frac{AD}{AB}\right)^2$$

(theorem)

$$\text{and } \frac{a(\triangle ADE)}{784} = \left(\frac{3}{7}\right)^2$$

$$\therefore a(\triangle ADE) = 784 \times \frac{9}{49} = 144\text{cm}^2$$

$$\therefore \text{area of trapezium } DBCE = \text{area of } \triangle ABC - \text{area of } \triangle ADE$$

$$\therefore \text{area of trapezium } DBCE = 784 - 144 = 640\text{cm}^2$$

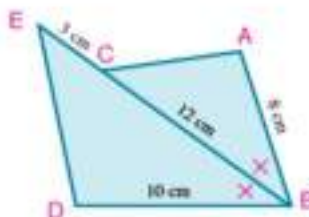
**Try to solve**

- 1 In the figure opposite:

$\overline{BE}$  bisects  $\angle ABD$ ,

$$a(\triangle ABC) = 48\text{ cm}^2$$

Find:  $a(\triangle EBD)$



**Example**

- 2 The ratio of the areas of two similar triangles equals  $4 : 9$ . If the perimeter of the greater triangle equals  $90\text{cm}$ , Find the perimeter of the smaller triangle.

**Solution**

Let  $\triangle ABC \sim \triangle DEF$

$$\therefore \frac{a(\triangle ABC)}{a(\triangle DEF)} = \left(\frac{AB}{DE}\right)^2 = \frac{4}{9} \quad \frac{AB}{DE} = \frac{2}{3}$$

$$\therefore \frac{\text{Perimeter of } \triangle ABC}{\text{Perimeter of } \triangle DEF} = \frac{AB}{DE} = \frac{2}{3}$$

$$\therefore \frac{\text{Perimeter of } (\triangle ABC)}{90} = \frac{2}{3}$$

$$\therefore \text{Perimeter of } \triangle ABC = 60\text{cm}$$

### Try to solve

- 2 ABC and DEF are two similar triangles,  $\frac{a(\triangle ABC)}{a(\triangle DEF)} = \frac{3}{4}$

- A If the perimeter of smaller triangle equals  $45\sqrt{3}$  cm. Find the perimeter of the greater triangle.
- B If  $EF = 28$  cm, find the length of  $\overline{BC}$ .

### Example

- 3 If every 1 cm on the map represents 10 kilometres, find the real area which the triangle ABC represents to the nearest square kilometre, If  $a(\triangle ABC) = 6.4 \text{ cm}^2$ .

### Solution

$$\text{Drawing scale} = \text{similarity ratio} = \frac{1}{10 \times 10^5}$$

$$\frac{\text{area of } \triangle ABC}{\text{real area}} = \text{square of similarity ratio}$$

$$\frac{6.4}{\text{real area}} = \left(\frac{1}{10 \times 10^5}\right)^2$$

$$\text{the real area} = 6.4 \times 10 \times 10 \times 10^5 \times 10^5 \text{ cm}^2 \\ \approx 640 \text{ km}^2$$



### Try to solve

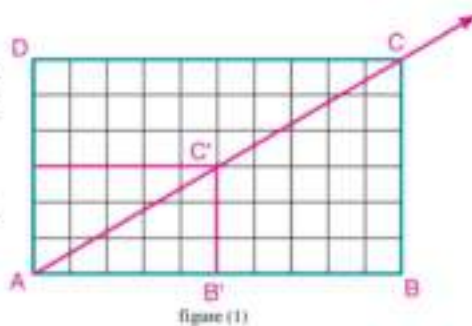
- 3 A On the map above, calculate the area of  $\triangle DEF$  in  $\text{cm}^2$ , and use it to estimate the real area which the triangle represents to the nearest  $\text{km}^2$ .
- B Use one of the maps of Egypt to calculate area of Sinai to the nearest 100 square kilometre. Compare your answer with the answer of your classmate.

## Second: The ratio between the areas of two similar polygons

### Group work

Work with your classmate to discuss how to divide two similar polygons into same number of triangles which each of them is similar to the corresponding one

- 1- Draw similar polygons as in figure (1) and figure (2).
- 2- In figure (1) draw  $\overrightarrow{AC}$ . What do you notice?



**3-** In figure (2) draw  $\overrightarrow{AD}$ . What do you notice? Is there an explanation to that?

**Notice that** In the two triangles  $AB'C'$ ,  $ABC$

$$m(\angle AB'C') = m(\angle B) \quad \text{from similarity polygons}$$

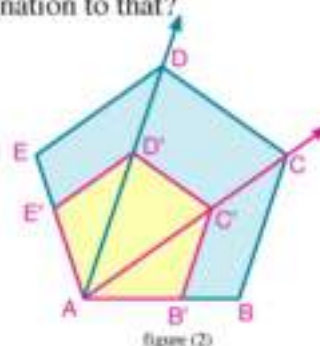
$$\text{and } \overline{B'C'} \parallel \overline{BC}$$

$$\therefore \triangle AB'C' \sim \triangle ABC \quad (\text{Corollary})$$

$$\text{similarly } m(\angle AE'D') = m(\angle E)$$

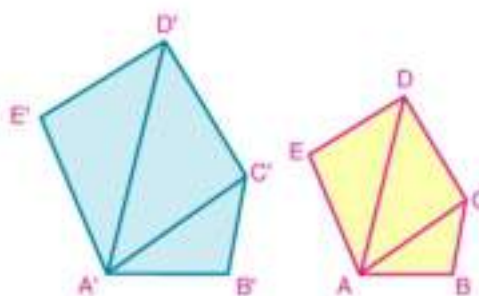
$$\therefore \overline{E'D'} \parallel \overline{ED} \text{ and } \triangle AE'D' \sim \triangle AED$$

and so on...



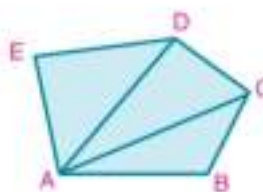
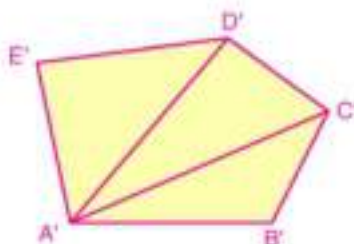
**Fact:** Two similar polygon can be divided into the same number of triangles, each is similar to the corresponding one.

**Note:** the fact mentioned above is valid regardless the number of the sides of the two similar polygons (have always the same number of sides). Any polygon of  $n$  sides can be divided into  $(n-2)$  triangles.



**theorem**  
4

**Ratio of the areas of the surfaces of two similar polygons equals the square of the ratio of the lengths of any two corresponding sides of the polygons**



**Given:** polygon  $ABCDE \sim$  polygon  $A'B'C'D'E'$

$$\text{R.t.p.: } \frac{a(\text{polygon } ABCDE)}{a(\text{polygon } A'B'C'D'E')} = \left(\frac{AB}{A'B'}\right)^2$$

**proof:** from  $A, A'$  draw  $\overline{AC}, \overline{AD}, \overline{A'C'}, \overline{A'D'}$

$$\therefore \text{polygon } ABCDE \sim \text{polygon } A'B'C'D'E'$$

$\therefore$  they are divided into the same number of triangles, each is similar to the corresponding one (**fact**). then:

$$\frac{a(\triangle ABC)}{a(\triangle A'B'C')} = \left(\frac{BC}{B'C'}\right)^2, \quad \frac{a(\triangle ADE)}{a(\triangle A'D'E')} = \left(\frac{DE}{D'E'}\right)^2, \quad \frac{a(\triangle ACD)}{a(\triangle A'CD')} = \left(\frac{CD}{C'D'}\right)^2$$

$$\therefore \frac{BC}{B'C'} = \frac{CD}{C'D'} = \frac{DE}{D'E'} = \frac{AB}{A'B'}$$

(from similar polygons)



$$\therefore \frac{a(\triangle ABC)}{a(\triangle A'B'C')} = \frac{a(\triangle ACD)}{a(\triangle A'C'D')} = \frac{a(\triangle ADE)}{a(\triangle A'D'E')} = \left(\frac{AB}{A'B'}\right)^2$$

From properties of proportion

$$\frac{a(\triangle ABC) + a(\triangle ACD) + a(\triangle ADE)}{a(\triangle A'B'C') + a(\triangle A'C'D') + a(\triangle A'D'E')} = \left(\frac{AB}{A'B'}\right)^2$$

$$\text{then: } \frac{a(\text{polygon } ABCDE)}{a(\text{polygon } A'B'C'D'E')} = \left(\frac{AB}{A'B'}\right)^2 \quad \text{Q.E.D.}$$

#### Notice

$$\left(\frac{AB}{A'B'}\right)^2 = \frac{(AB)^2}{(A'B')^2}$$

#### Try to solve

- 4 A If polygon  $ABCD \sim$  polygon  $A'B'C'D'$ ,  $\frac{AB}{A'B'} = \frac{1}{3}$ , then write the value of each of the following:

$$\frac{a(\text{polygon } ABCD)}{a(\text{polygon } A'B'C'D')} \quad , \quad \frac{\text{perimeter of polygon } ABCD}{\text{perimeter of polygon } A'B'C'D'}$$

- B If the two polygons  $ABCDE$  and  $A'B'C'D'E'$  are similar and the ratio of their areas equals 4 : 25

$$\text{Then write the value of each of: } \frac{AB}{A'B'} \quad , \quad \frac{\text{perimeter of polygon } ABCDE}{\text{perimeter of polygon } A'B'C'D'E'}$$

- C If the ratio of the perimeters of two similar polygons equals 1 : 4, and area of the first polygon equals  $25\text{cm}^2$ . Find the area of the second polygon.

- D If the length of two corresponding sides in two similar polygons are 12cm and 16cm, and the area of the smaller polygon equals  $135\text{cm}^2$ . Then find the area of the greater polygon.

#### Example

- 4  $ABCD$  and  $XYZL$  are two similar polygons and :  $m(\angle A) = 40^\circ$ ,  $XY = \frac{3}{4}AB$ ,  $CD = 16\text{cm}$ .

Calculate: **first:**  $m(\angle X)$

**Second:** length of  $\overline{ZL}$

**third:**  $a(\text{polygon } ABCD) : a(\text{polygon } XYZL)$

#### Solution

$$\therefore \text{polygon } ABCD \sim \text{polygon } XYZL$$

$$\therefore m(\angle A) = m(\angle X) \text{ then } m(\angle X) = 40^\circ \quad (\text{first required})$$

$$\therefore XY = \frac{3}{4}AB \quad \therefore \frac{AB}{XY} = \frac{4}{3} \quad (\text{from properties of proportion})$$

$$\text{From similar polygons, we get also } \frac{AB}{XY} = \frac{CD}{ZL}$$

$$\therefore \frac{4}{3} = \frac{16}{ZL} \text{ then } ZL = \frac{3 \times 16}{4} = 12\text{cm} \quad (\text{second required})$$

$$a(\text{polygon } ABCD) : a(\text{polygon } XYZL) = (AB)^2 : (XY)^2$$

$$= 16k^2 : 9k^2$$

$$= 16 : 9 \quad (\text{third required})$$

#### Notice that

$$AB = 4K$$

$$XY = 3K$$

$$K \neq 0$$

**Example**

- 5 The ratio of the perimeters of two similar polygons equals 3 : 4, if the sum of their areas equals  $225\text{cm}^2$ , then find the area of each of them.

**Solution**

$\therefore$  The ratio of the perimeters of the two similar polygons = 3 : 4

$\therefore$  The ratio of the lengths of any two corresponding sides of them = 3 : 4

Let the area of the first polygon be  $9x$ ,

and the area of the second polygon be  $16x$

$$\therefore 9x + 16x = 225, \text{ then } x = \frac{225}{9+16} = 9$$

$$\therefore \text{area of the first polygon} = 9 \times 9 = 81\text{cm}^2$$

$$\therefore \text{area of the second polygon} = 16 \times 9 = 144\text{cm}^2$$

**Try to solve**

- 5 **Agriculture:** Two farms are in the form of similar polygons, the ratio of the lengths of two corresponding sides of them equals 5:3, if the difference between their areas equals 32 feddans, then find the area of each farm.

**Example**

- 6 ABCD and XYZL are two similar polygons, the diagonals of the first are intersecting at M and the diagonals of the second are intersecting at N.  
prove that  $a(\text{polygon ABCD}) : a(\text{polygon XYZL}) = (MC)^2 : (NZ)^2$

**Solution**

$\therefore$  polygon ABCD  $\sim$  polygon XYZL

$\therefore \triangle ABC \sim \triangle XYZ,$

$\triangle DBC \sim \triangle LYZ$  (fact)

$\therefore \triangle MBC \sim \triangle NYZ$  (why)

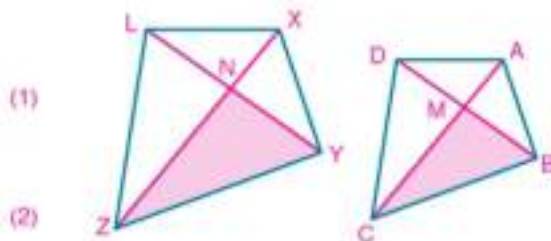
$$\text{then } \frac{BC}{YZ} = \frac{MC}{NZ}$$

$\therefore$  polygon ABCD  $\sim$  polygon XYZL

$$\therefore \frac{a(\text{polygon ABCD})}{a(\text{polygon XYZL})} = \left(\frac{BC}{YZ}\right)^2$$

From (1) and (2) we deduce that:

$$a(\text{polygon ABCD}) : a(\text{polygon XYZL}) = (MC)^2 : (NZ)^2$$



### Try to solve

- 6 ABCD and XYZL are two similar polygons, if M is the midpoint of  $\overline{BC}$ , and N is the midpoint of  $\overline{YZ}$ , then prove that:  
 $a(\text{polygon ABCD}) : a(\text{polygon XYZL}) = (MD)^2 : (NL)^2$

### Example

- 7 ABC is a right angled triangle at B, if  $\overline{AB}$ ,  $\overline{BC}$  and  $\overline{AC}$  are corresponding sides of three similar polygons X, Y and Z respectively, described on the sides of the triangle ABC. Prove that :  $a(\text{polygon X}) + a(\text{polygon Y}) = a(\text{polygon Z})$

### Solution

$$\because \text{polygon X} \sim \text{polygon Z} \quad \therefore \frac{a(\text{polygon X})}{a(\text{polygon Z})} = \frac{(AB)^2}{(AC)^2}$$

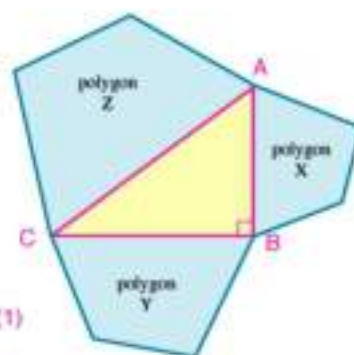
$$\because \text{polygon Y} \sim \text{polygon Z} \quad \therefore \frac{a(\text{polygon Y})}{a(\text{polygon Z})} = \frac{(BC)^2}{(AC)^2}$$

$$\therefore \frac{a(\text{polygon X})}{a(\text{polygon Z})} + \frac{a(\text{polygon Y})}{a(\text{polygon Z})} = \frac{(AB)^2}{(AC)^2} + \frac{(BC)^2}{(AC)^2} = \frac{(AB)^2 + (BC)^2}{(AC)^2} \quad (1)$$

$$\because m(\angle B) = 90^\circ \quad (AB)^2 + (BC)^2 = (AC)^2 \quad (2)$$

$$\text{from (1), (2) we get } \frac{a(\text{polygon X})}{a(\text{polygon Z})} + \frac{a(\text{polygon Y})}{a(\text{polygon Z})} = 1$$

$$\text{then } a(\text{polygon X}) + a(\text{polygon Y}) = a(\text{polygon Z})$$



### Try to solve

- 7 ABC is a right angled triangle at A, in which  $AB = 5\text{cm}$ ,  $BC = 13\text{ cm}$ , where  $\overline{AB}$ ,  $\overline{BC}$  and  $\overline{AC}$  are three corresponding sides of three similar polygons L, M, and N respectively, described on the sides of the triangle ABC from outside.  
 If the area of polygon L equals  $100\text{cm}^2$ , find the area of each of polygons M and N.

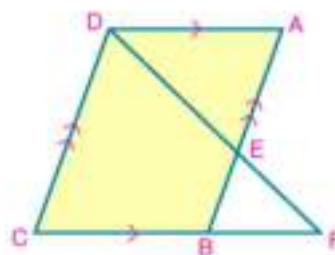
### Check your understanding

In the figure opposite : ABCD is a parallelogram

$E \in \overline{AB}$  where  $\frac{AE}{EB} = \frac{3}{2}$ ,  $\overrightarrow{DE} \cap \overrightarrow{CB} = \{F\}$

- 1 Prove that:  $\triangle DCF \sim \triangle EAD$

- 2 Find  $\frac{a(\triangle DCF)}{a(\triangle EAD)}$





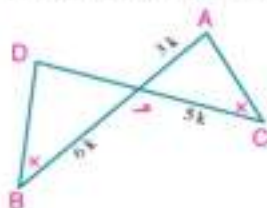


Exercises (2 - 3)



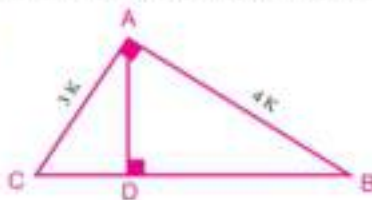
- 1 Complete:
- A If  $\triangle ABC \sim \triangle XYZ$ , and  $AB = 3 XY$ , then  $\frac{\text{area}(\triangle XYZ)}{\text{area}(\triangle ABC)} = \underline{\hspace{2cm}}$ .
- B If  $\triangle ABC \sim \triangle DEF$ , area of  $(\triangle ABC) = 9$  area of  $(\triangle DEF)$  and  $DE = 4\text{cm}$ , then  $AB = \underline{\hspace{2cm}}\text{cm}$ .
- 2 Study each of the following figures, where K is constant of proportion, then complete:

A



$\overline{AB} \cap \overline{CD} = \{E\}$   
 area of  $(\triangle ACE) = 900\text{ cm}^2$   
 then: area of  $(\triangle DEB) = \underline{\hspace{2cm}}\text{ cm}^2$

B



$m(\angle BAC) = 90^\circ$ ,  $\overline{AD} \perp \overline{BC}$   
 area of  $(\triangle ADC) = 180\text{ cm}^2$  then:  
 area of  $(\triangle ABC) = \underline{\hspace{2cm}}\text{ cm}^2$

- 3 ABC is a triangle,  $D \in \overline{AB}$  where  $AD = 2 BD$  and  $E \in \overline{AC}$  where  $\overline{DE} \parallel \overline{BC}$ . If the area of  $\triangle ADE = 60\text{ cm}^2$ , find the area of the trapezium DBCE.
- 4 ABC is a right angled triangle at B. The equilateral triangles ABX, BCY, and ACZ are drawn. prove that : area of  $(\triangle ABX) + \text{area of } (\triangle BCY) = \text{area of } (\triangle ACZ)$ .
- 5 ABC is an inscribed triangle in a circle where  $\frac{AB}{BC} = \frac{4}{3}$ . from the point B, a tangent is drawn to the circle and intersects  $\overline{AC}$  at E.  
 prove that:  $\frac{\text{area of } (\triangle ABC)}{\text{area of } (\triangle ABE)} = \frac{7}{16}$
- 6 ABCD is a parallelogram,  $X \in \overline{AB}$ ,  $X \neq \overline{AB}$ , where  $BX = 2 AB$ ,  $Y \in \overline{CB}$ ,  $Y \neq \overline{CB}$ , where  $BY = 2 BC$ . the parallelogram BXZY is drawn, prove that:  $\frac{\text{area of } (ABCD)}{\text{area of } (XBYZ)} = \frac{1}{4}$

- 7  $\triangle ABC$  is a right angled triangle at B,  $\overline{BD} \perp \overline{AC}$  and intersects it at D. The squares  $AXYB$  and  $BMNC$  are drawn on  $\overline{AB}$  and  $\overline{BC}$  respectively outside the triangle  $ABC$ :

A Prove that polygon  $DAXYB \sim$  polygon  $DBMNC$

B If  $AB = 6\text{cm}$  and  $AC = 10\text{cm}$ , find the ratio between the areas of the two polygons.

- 8  $\triangle ABC$  is a triangle,  $\overline{AB}$ ,  $\overline{CB}$  and  $\overline{AC}$  are corresponding sides to three similar polygons  $X$ ,  $Y$ ,  $Z$  drawn outside the triangle respectively. If the area of polygon  $X$  equals  $40\text{ cm}^2$ , area of polygon  $Y$  equals  $85\text{ cm}^2$  and area of polygon  $Z$  equals  $125\text{ cm}^2$ . Prove that: the triangle  $ABC$  is right angled.

- 9  $ABCD$  is a square,  $\overline{AB}$ ,  $\overline{BC}$ ,  $\overline{CD}$  and  $\overline{DA}$  are divided in the ratio  $1 : 3$  by the points  $X$ ,  $Y$ ,  $Z$  and  $L$  respectively.

Prove that:

A  $XYZL$  is a square

B 
$$\frac{\text{Area of the square } XYZL}{\text{Area of the square } ABCD} = \frac{5}{8}$$

- 10 The floor of a GYM rectangular hall of dimensions  $8\text{m}$  and  $12\text{m}$ , was covered with wood, for 3200 pounds. Calculate ( use similarity) the cost of covering a larger rectangular hall of dimensions  $14\text{ cm}$  and  $21\text{cm}$  with the same kind of wood and price.

## Applications of Similarity in the circle

2 - 4



In each of the following figures, two similar triangles. Write the two triangles in order of their corresponding congruent angles, and deduce the proportion of their corresponding sides.

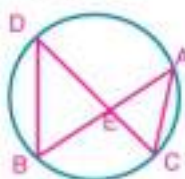


figure (1)

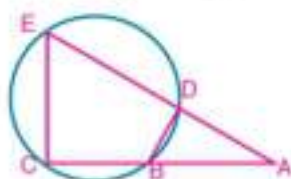


figure (2)

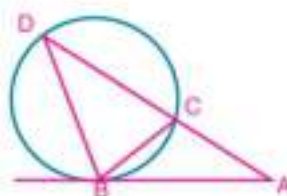


figure (3)

- In figure (1): Is there a relation between  $EA \times EB$  and  $EC \times ED$ ?
- In figure (2): Is there a relation between  $AE \times AD$  and  $AC \times AB$ ?
- In figure (3): Is there a relation between  $AD \times AC$  and  $(AB)^2$ ?

### Well known problem

If the two lines containing the two chords  $\overline{AB}$ ,  $\overline{CD}$  of a circle are intersecting at the point E, then  $EA \times EB = EC \times ED$

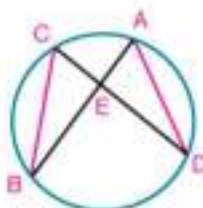


figure (1)

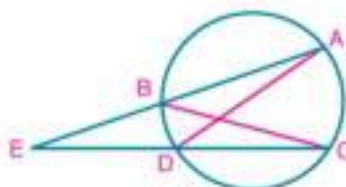


figure (2)

### To deduce that:

- Draw  $\overline{AD}$  and  $\overline{BC}$
- In each of the two figures, prove that the two triangles are similar:  
then  $\frac{EA}{EC} = \frac{ED}{EB}$   $\therefore EA \times EB = EC \times ED$

### You will learn

- The relation between two intersecting chords in a circle.
- The relation between two secants to the circle from a point outside it.
- The relation between the length of a tangent and the lengths of the two parts of a secant to the circle drawn from a point outside it.
- Modeling, solving problems, and life applications using similarity of polygons in a circle.

### Key-term

- Chord
- Secant
- Tangent
- Diameter
- Common External Tangent
- Common Internal Tangent
- Concentric Circles

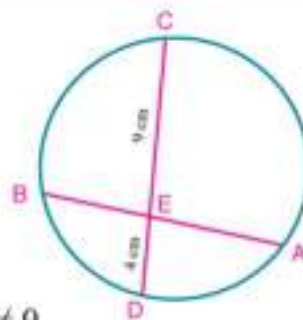


### Example

- 1 In the figure opposite:  $\overline{AB} \cap \overline{CD} = \{E\}$ ,

if  $\frac{EA}{EB} = \frac{4}{3}$ ,  $EC = 9\text{cm}$  and  $ED = 4\text{cm}$

Find the length  $\overline{EB}$



### Solution

$$\therefore \frac{EA}{EB} = \frac{4}{3} \quad \therefore EC = 4K, \quad EB = 3K \quad \text{where } K \neq 0$$

$$\therefore \overline{AB} \cap \overline{CD} = \{E\} \quad \therefore EA \times EB = EC \times ED \quad (\text{well known problem})$$

$$\text{then : } 4K \times 3K = 9 \times 4$$

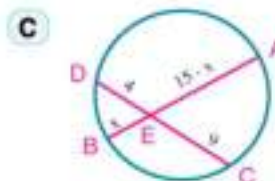
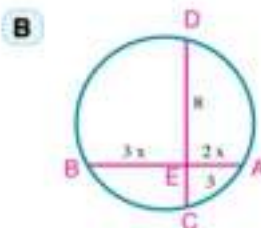
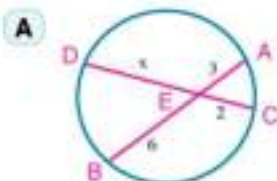
$$12K^2 = 36$$

$$K^2 = 3$$

$$K = \sqrt{3}, \quad EB = 3\sqrt{3} \text{ cm}$$

### Try to solve

- 1 Find the value of  $x$  in each of the following figures (lengths are measured in centimetres)



### Example

- 2 In the figure opposite:  $\overline{AB} \cap \overline{CD} = \{E\}$ ,  $AB = 5\text{cm}$ ,  $CD = 9\text{cm}$ ,  $ED = 3\text{cm}$ . Find the length of  $\overline{BE}$

### Solution

let  $BE = x \text{ cm}$ .

$$\therefore \overline{AB} \cap \overline{CD} = \{E\}$$

$$\therefore EB \times EA = ED \times EC \quad (\text{well known problem})$$

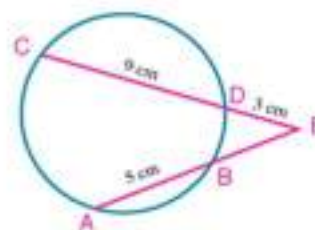
$$\text{then : } x(x + 5) = 3(3 + 9)$$

$$x^2 + 5x - 36 = 0$$

$$(x - 4)(x + 9) = 0$$

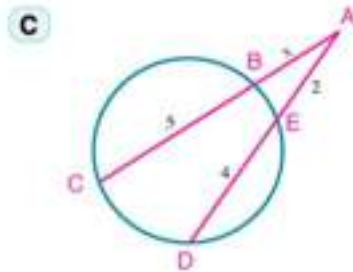
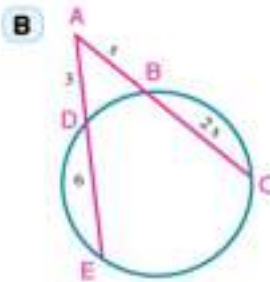
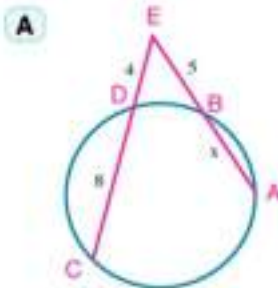
$$\therefore x = 4, \quad x = -9 \quad \text{refused}$$

$$\therefore \text{the length of } \overline{BE} = 4\text{cm}.$$



### Try to solve

- 2 Find the value of  $x$  in each of the following figures (lengths are measured in centimetres)



**In the figure opposite:**  $\overrightarrow{EA}$  is a tangent to the circle

$\overrightarrow{EC}$  intersects the circle at D, C

$$\therefore (EA)^2 = ED \times EC$$

### Example

- 3 In the figure opposite:  $\overrightarrow{EA}$  is a tangent to the circle,  $\overrightarrow{EA}$  intersects the circle at D and C respectively, where  $ED = 4\text{cm}$ ,  $CD = 5\text{cm}$ , find the length of  $\overrightarrow{EA}$

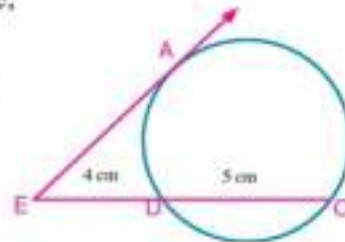
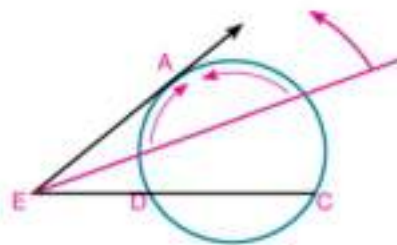
### Solution

$\therefore \overrightarrow{EA}$  is tangent,  $\overrightarrow{EC}$  is a secant

$$\therefore (EA)^2 = ED \times EC \quad (\text{Corollary})$$

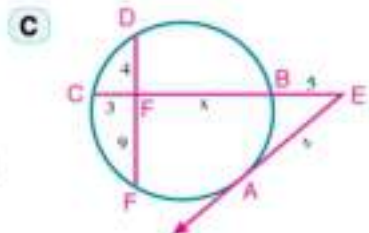
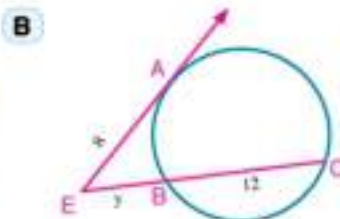
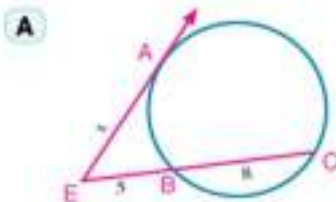
$$(EA)^2 = 4(4 + 5) = 36$$

$$\therefore EA = 6\text{cm}$$



### Try to solve

- 3 In each of the following figures  $\overrightarrow{EA}$  is a tangent to the circle. Find the numerical values of  $x$ ,  $y$  and  $z$  (lengths are measured in centimetres)



### Converse of the well known problem

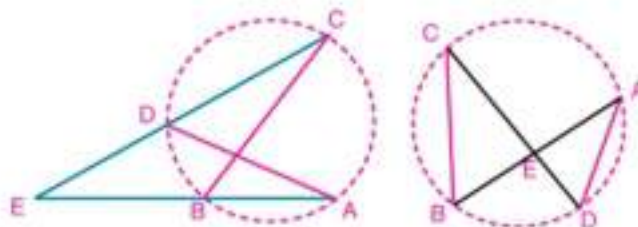
If the two lines containing the two segments  $\overline{AB}$  and  $\overline{CD}$  intersect at a point E (A, B, C, D, and E are distinct points)  
and  $EA \times EB = EC \times ED$  then: the points A, B, C and D lie on a circle.

### Notice that:

$$EA \times EB = EC \times ED$$

$$\text{then } \frac{EA}{EC} = \frac{ED}{EB}$$

- Is  $\triangle EAD \sim \triangle ECB$ ? Why?
- Is  $m(\angle A) = m(\angle C)$ ? Why?
- Do the points A, D, B and C lie on a circle? Explain your answer.



### Example

- 4 ABC is a triangle in which  $AB = 15\text{cm}$ ,  $AC = 12\text{cm}$ .  $D \in \overline{AB}$  where  $AD = 4\text{cm}$ ,  $E \in \overline{AC}$  where  $AE = 5\text{cm}$ .  
Prove that the figure DBCE is a cyclic quadrilateral.

### Solution

$$\therefore AD \times AB = 4 \times 15 = 60,$$

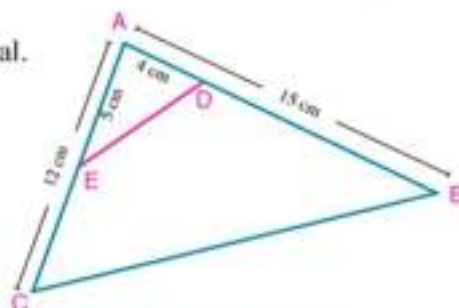
$$AE \times AC = 5 \times 12 = 60$$

$$\therefore AD \times AB = AE \times AC$$

$$\therefore \overrightarrow{BE} \cap \overrightarrow{CE} = \{A\}, AD \times AB = AE \times AC$$

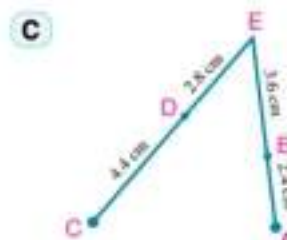
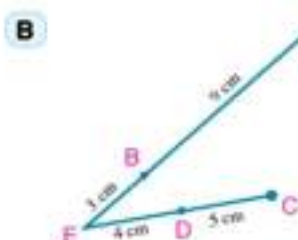
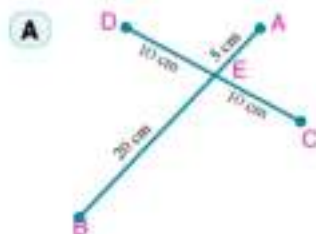
$\therefore$  the points D, B, C and E lie on a circle (converse of the well known problem)

then the figure DBCE is a cyclic quadrilateral



### Try to solve

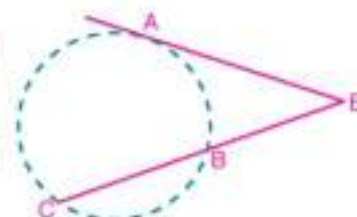
- 4 In which of the following figures, the points A, B, C and D lie on a circle? Explain your answer.



### Corollary 2

$$\text{If } (EA)^2 = EB \times EC$$

then  $\overline{EA}$  is a tangent segment to the circle which passes through the points A, B and C.





**Example**

- 5 ABC is a triangle in which  $AB = 8\text{cm}$ ,  $AC = 4\text{cm}$ ,  $D \in \overline{AC}$ ,  $D \notin \overline{AC}$  where  $CD = 12\text{cm}$ . prove that  $\overline{AB}$  touches the circle which passes through the points B, C, and D

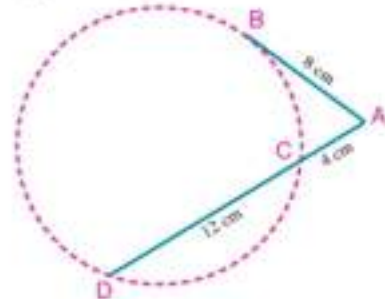
**Solution**

$$\therefore AC \times AD = 4(4 + 12) = 64,$$

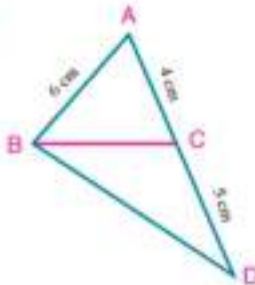
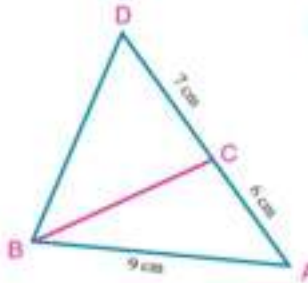
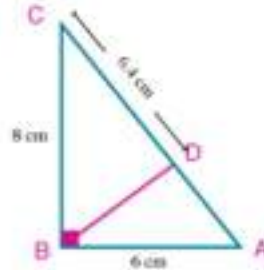
$$(AB)^2 = (8)^2 = 64$$

$$\therefore (AB)^2 = AC \times AD$$

$\therefore \overline{AB}$  touches the circle which passes through the points B, C, and D at the point B.

**Try to solve**

- 5 In which of the following figures is  $\overline{AB}$  a tangent segment to the circle which passes through the points B, C, and D?

**A****B****C****Example**

- 6 **Life applications: Geology:** In one of the coastal areas, there is a ground layer in the form of a natural arc. The geologists found that, it is an arc of a circle, as in the figure opposite. Find the length of the radius of the circle's arc.

**Solution**

let the length of the radius of the circle's arc be  $r$  metres

$\therefore \overline{AB}$  and  $\overline{CD}$  are two intersecting chords at E

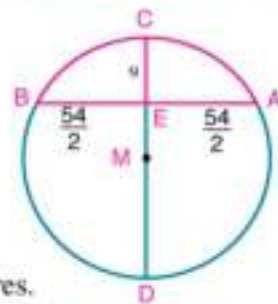
$$\therefore EA \times EB = EC \times ED$$

$$27 \times 27 = 9 \times (2r - 9)$$

$$2r - 9 = 81$$

$$r = 45$$

i.e. the length of the radius of the circle's arc equals 45 metres.

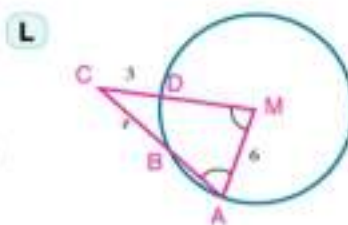
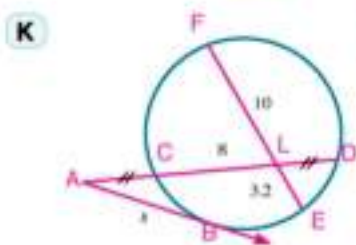
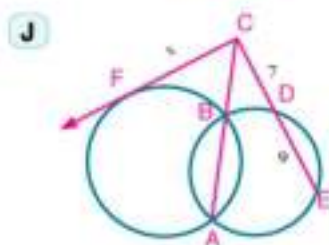
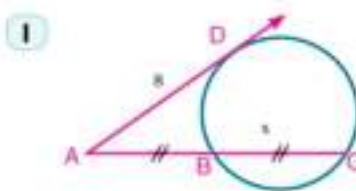
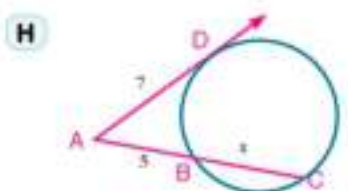
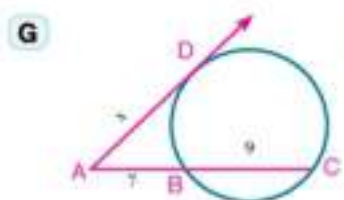
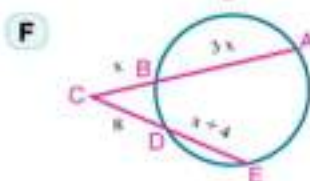
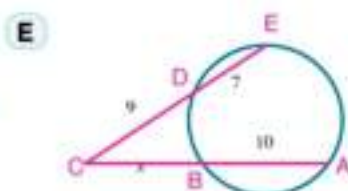
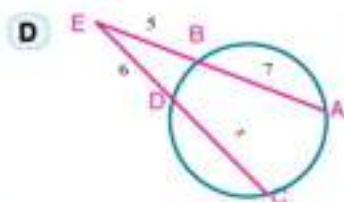
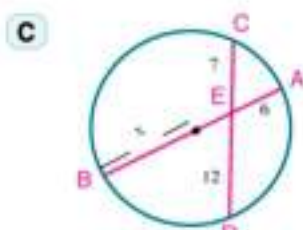
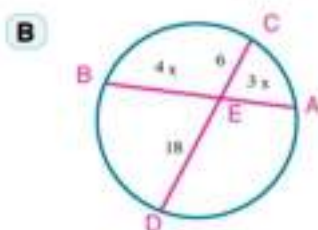
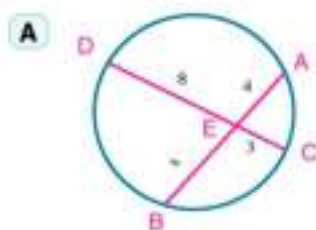




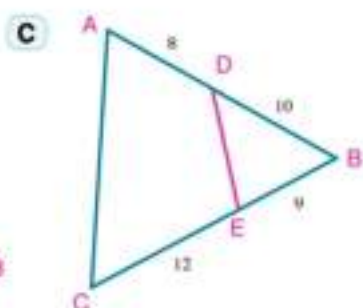
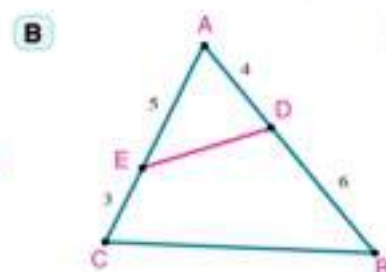
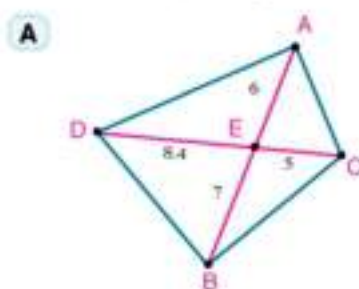
## Exercises (2 - 4)



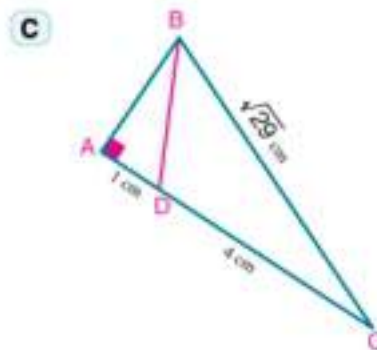
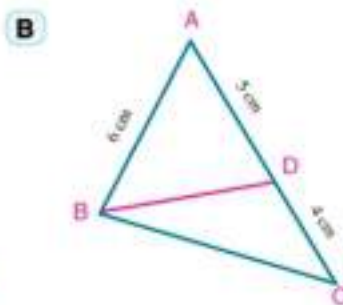
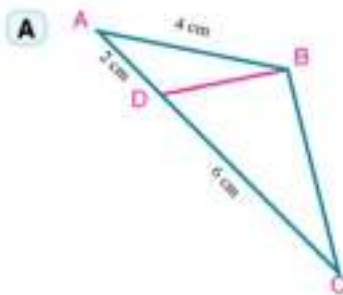
- 1 Use the calculator or mental math to find the numerical value of  $x$  in each of the following figures. (lengths are measured in centimetres)



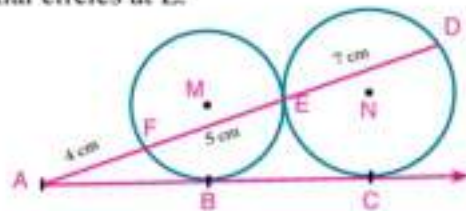
- 2 In which of the following figures, the points A, B, C and D lie on a circle? Explain your answer. (the lengths are measured in centimetres)



- 3 In which of the following figures,  $\overline{AB}$  is a tangent to the circle passing through the points B, C and D.

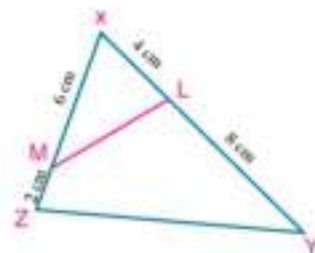


- 4 Two circles are intersected at A and B.  $C \in \overleftrightarrow{AB}$  and  $C \notin \overline{AB}$ . From C, The two tangent segments  $\overline{CX}$  and  $\overline{CY}$  are drawn to the circle at X and Y respectively. Prove that  $CX = CY$ .
- 5 In the figure opposite: M and N are two tangential circles at E.  $\overline{AC}$  touches the circle M at B, and touches the circle N at C.  $\overline{AE}$  intersects the two circles at F and D respectively, where  $AF = 4\text{cm}$ ,  $FE = 5\text{cm}$ ,  $ED = 7\text{cm}$ . Prove that B is the midpoint of  $\overline{AC}$ .



- 6 In the figure opposite:  $L \in \overline{XY}$  where  $XL = 4\text{cm}$ ,  $YL = 8\text{cm}$ ,  $M \in \overline{XZ}$  where  $XM = 6\text{cm}$ ,  $ZM = 2\text{cm}$ . Prove that:

- A  $\triangle XLM \sim \triangle XZY$   
 B  $LYZM$  is a cyclic quadrilateral.



- 7  $\overline{AB} \cap \overline{CE} = \{E\}$ ,  $AE = \frac{5}{12} BE$ ,  $DE = \frac{3}{5} EC$ . If  $BE = 6\text{cm}$  and  $CE = 5\text{cm}$ . prove that the points A, B, C and D lie on one circle.
- 8  $\triangle ABC$  is a triangle.  $D \in \overline{BC}$  where  $DB = 5\text{cm}$  and  $DC = 4\text{cm}$ . If  $AC = 6\text{cm}$ . Prove that:
- A  $\overline{AC}$  is a tangent segment to the circle passing through the points A, B and D.  
 B  $\triangle ACD \sim \triangle BCA$   
 C Area of  $(\triangle ABD)$ : area of  $(\triangle ABC) = 5 : 9$
- 9 Two concentric circles at M, their radii are  $12\text{cm}$ ,  $7\text{cm}$ ,  $\overline{AD}$  is a chord in the larger circle to intersect the smaller circle at B and C respectively. Prove that  $AB \times BD = 95$ .



- 10 ABCD is a rectangle in which  $AB = 6\text{cm}$  and  $BC = 8\text{cm}$ .  $\overline{BE} \perp \overline{AC}$  and intersects  $\overline{AC}$  at E and  $\overline{AD}$  at F.

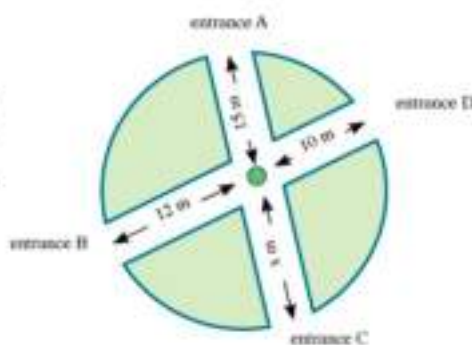
A Prove that  $(AB)^2 = AF \times AD$ .

B Find the length of  $\overline{AF}$ .

- 11 **Industry:** A gear was broken in a machine, to change it, it is needed to know the radius length of its circle. The figure opposite shows a part of this gear. What is the radius length of its circle?



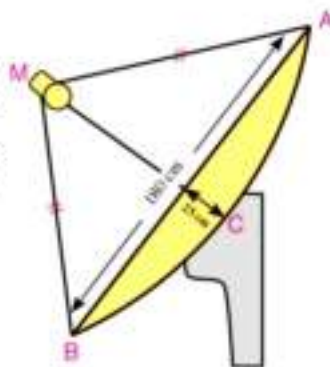
- 12 **Environment:** The figure opposite illustrates a plan of a circular garden involving two intersected roads at a fountain. How far is the fountain from the entrance C?



- 13 **Home:** Hoda uses a circular grill of a radius 50cm made of wire to prepare the meat. There are two parallel and equal wires supporting the grill as shown in the figure opposite. If the distance between those two wires is 10cm, calculate the length of those two wires.



- 14 **Contact:** satellites transmit the T.V programs everywhere on Earth special dishes are used to receive the signals of T.V broadcast these dishes are concave the figure opposite illustrates a section of such a dish of a diameter length 180cm.



### General Exercises

For more exercises, please visit the website of Ministry of Education.

## Two Similar Polygons

Two polygons having the same number of sides are said to be similar if the corresponding angles are congruent and the lengths of their corresponding sides are proportional .

### Similarity Ratio ( Scale factor)

If polygon  $A' B' C' D' \sim$  polygon  $A B C D$ , then  $k$  is the scale factor of polygon  $A' B' C' D'$  to polygon  $A B C D$  where

$$\frac{A'B'}{AB} = \frac{B'C'}{BC} = \frac{C'D'}{CD} = \frac{A'D'}{AD} = K \quad , \quad K \neq 0$$

The ratio of perimeters of two similar polygons equals the scale factor of its similarity.

**Corollary (1):** If a line is drawn parallel to one side of a triangle and intersects the other two sides or the lines containing them, then the resulting triangle is similar to the original triangle.

**Corollary (2):** In any right triangle, the altitude to the hypotenuse separates the triangle into two triangles which are similar to each other and to the original triangle

**Theorem 1: sss Similarity theorem** If the sides of two triangles are in proportion, then the two triangles are similar..

**Theorem 2: SAS Similarity theorem** If an angle of one triangle is congruent to an angle of another triangle and the sides including those angles are in proportion, then the triangles are similar.

### The relation between the areas of two similar polygons

**Theorem 3:** the ratio of the areas of the surfaces of two similar triangles equals the square of the ratio of the lengths of any two corresponding sides of the two triangles.

**Fact:** Two similar polygon can be divided into the same number of triangles, each is similar to the corresponding one.

**Theorem 4:** The ratio of the areas of the surfaces of two similar polygons equals the square of the ratio of the lengths of any two corresponding sides of the polygons

### @ Enrichment Information

Please visit the following links.





# Geometry

## Unit

# 3

## The Triangle Proportionality Theorems

Temple of Hatshepsut in Luxor

### Unit objectives

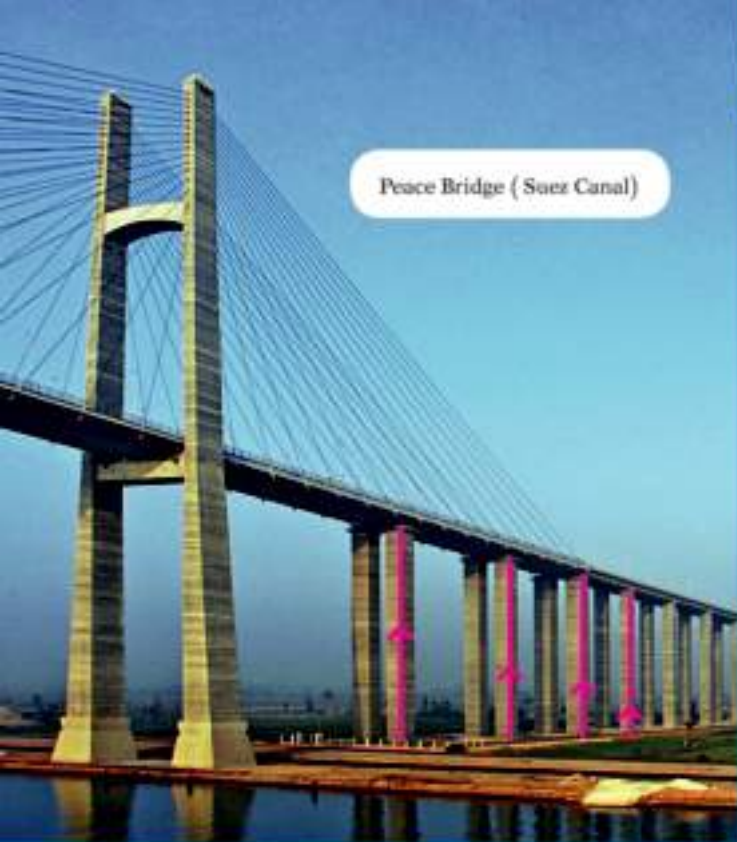
by the end of the unit, the student should be able to:

- Recognize and prove the theorem : if a line is drawn parallel to one side of a triangle and intersects the other two sides , then it divides them into segments whose lengths are proportional"
- Recognize and prove TALIS general theorem" Given several coplanar parallel lines and two transversals..."
- Recognize and prove the theorem" the bisector of the interior (or exterior) angle of a triangle at any vertex divides the opposite base.
- Find the power of a point w.r. to a circle ( secants and tangents).
- Deduce the measures of angles resulting from the intersection of chords and the tangents in a circle .
- Solve applications about finding the length of each of the interior and the exterior bisectors .

### Key - Terms

- |            |                   |                   |
|------------|-------------------|-------------------|
| Ratio      | Median            | Exterior Bisector |
| Proportion | Transversal       | Perpendicular     |
| Parallel   | Bisector          |                   |
| Midpoint   | Interior Bisector |                   |





Peace Bridge ( Suez Canal)

## Lessons of the Unit

**Lesson (3 - 1):** Parallel Lines and Proportional Parts.

**Lesson (3 - 2):** Angle Bisectors and Proportional Parts.

**Lesson (3 - 3):** Applications of Proportionality in the Circle.

## Materials

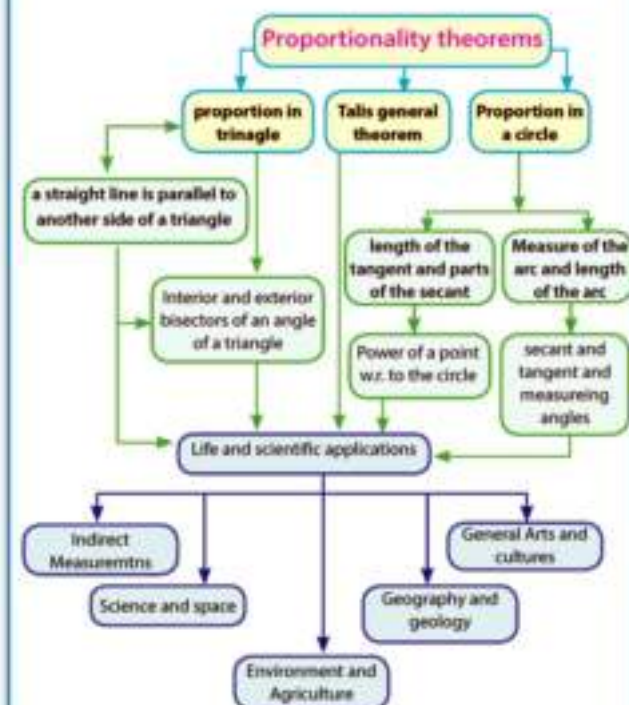
Geometric instruments for drawing and measurements - Computer - Graphic programs - datashow - squared paper - thread - scissors

## Brief History

Mathematics is an intellectual activity full of fun and makes the mind open and clear, and contributes to solving many problems and life challenges through representing or modeling it by relations in language of mathematics and their symbols to be solved, then returned to the physical assets.

Ancient Egyptians realized so, they set up temples and pyramids as straight lines, some are parallel and the other are transversals to them, and also plowed farmland in parallel straight lines, Greeks- has taken Geometry from ancient Egyptians, Euclid (300 BC) put geometric integrated system, was known as Euclidean Geometry depend on Five Axioms, the important one is parallelism Axiom which is " From a point does not belong to a straight line, it is possible to draw only a straight line passes through this point and parallel to the given line" The Euclidean Geometry dealing with plane figures (triangles - polygons-circles ) and three dimensions figures, they also have practical applications in various fields including construction of roads, urban planning and preparation of maps, which rely on parallel lines and transversals to them according to the real length and drawing length (scale drawing).

## Chart of the unit



# 3 - 1

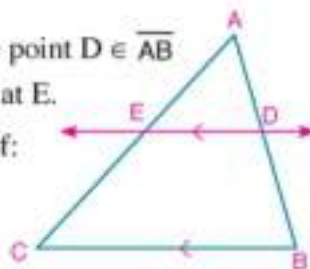
## Parallel Lines and Proportional Parts

### You will learn

- Properties of the straight line which is parallel to any side of a triangle.
- Use proportion in calculation of lengths and in prove relations to line segments resulting from the transversals of parallel lines.
- Modelling and solving life problems including parallel lines and their transversals



- 1- Draw the triangle  $ABC$ , determine the point  $D \in \overline{AB}$  then draw  $\overleftrightarrow{DE} \parallel \overline{BC}$  and intersects  $\overline{AC}$  at  $E$ .
- 2- Find by measuring the length of each of:  $\overline{AD}$ ,  $\overline{DB}$ ,  $\overline{AE}$  and  $\overline{EC}$
- 3- Calculate each of the ratio  $\frac{AD}{DB}$ ,  $\frac{AE}{EC}$  and compare between them , what do you notice?



If the location of  $\overleftrightarrow{DE}$  has been changed preserving parallelism to  $\overline{BC}$ .

Is the relation between  $\frac{AD}{DB}$  and  $\frac{AE}{EC}$  changed? What do you deduce?

### Key-terms

- Parallel
- Midpoint
- Median
- Transversal

#### Theorem 1

**If a line is drawn parallel to one side of a triangle and intersects the other two sides, then it divides them into segments whose lengths are proportional.**

**Given:**  $ABC$  is a triangle,  $\overleftrightarrow{DE} \parallel \overline{BC}$

**R.t.p:**  $\frac{AD}{DB} = \frac{AE}{EC}$

**Proof:**  $\because \overleftrightarrow{DE} \parallel \overline{BC}$

$\therefore \triangle ABC \sim \triangle ADE$  (similarity postulate)

then:  $\frac{AB}{AD} = \frac{AC}{AE}$  (1)

$\because D \in \overline{AB}$  ,  $E \in \overline{AC}$

$\therefore AB = AD + DB$  ,  $AC = AE + EC$

from (1) and (2) we get:

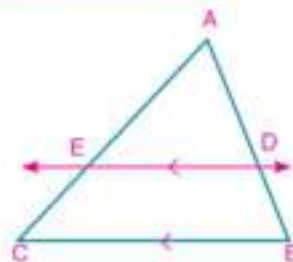
$$\frac{AD + DB}{AD} = \frac{AE + EC}{AE}$$

$$\text{then: } \frac{AD}{AD} + \frac{DB}{AD} = \frac{AE}{AE} + \frac{EC}{AE}$$

$$1 + \frac{DB}{AD} = 1 + \frac{EC}{AE}$$

$$\therefore \frac{DB}{AD} = \frac{EC}{AE}$$

from the properties of proportion, we get:  $\frac{AD}{DB} = \frac{AE}{EC}$  (Q.E.D)



### Materials

- Geometric instruments
- Computer
- Graphic program
- Data show



**Notice that:**

$$\therefore \frac{AD}{DB} = \frac{AE}{EC}$$

$$\therefore \frac{AD + DB}{DB} = \frac{AE + EC}{EC}$$

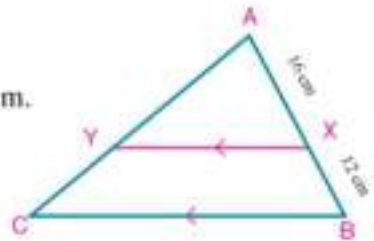
$$\therefore \frac{AB}{DB} = \frac{AC}{EC}$$

**Example**

- 1 In the figure opposite:  $\overline{XY} \parallel \overline{BC}$ ,  $AX = 16\text{cm}$ ,  $BX = 12\text{cm}$ .

A If  $AY = 24\text{cm}$ , Find  $YC$ .

B If  $CY = 21\text{cm}$ , find  $AC$ .



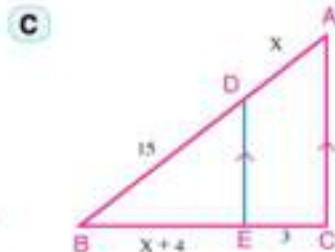
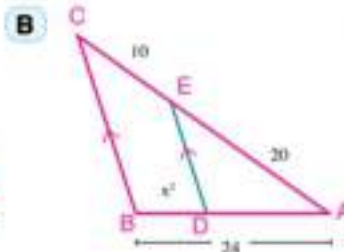
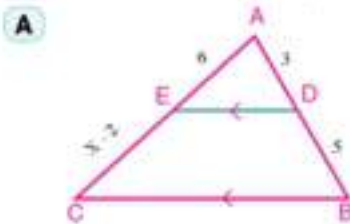
**Solution**

A  $\therefore \overline{XY} \parallel \overline{BC} \quad \therefore \frac{AX}{XB} = \frac{AY}{YC}$   
 and:  $\frac{16}{12} = \frac{24}{YC} \quad \therefore YC = \frac{12 \times 24}{16} = 18\text{cm}.$

B  $\therefore \overline{XY} \parallel \overline{BC} \quad \therefore \frac{AB}{BX} = \frac{AC}{CY}$   
 and:  $\frac{16 + 12}{12} = \frac{AC}{21} \quad \therefore AC = \frac{28 \times 21}{12} = 49\text{cm}.$

**Try to solve**

- 1 In each of the following figures :  $\overline{DE} \parallel \overline{BC}$ . Find the numerical value of  $x$  (lengths are measured in centimetres)

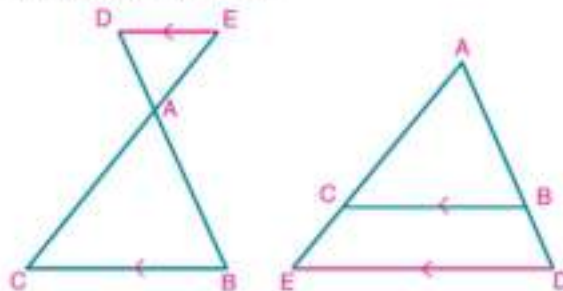


**Corollary**

If a straight line is drawn outside the triangle  $ABC$  parallel to one side of the triangle, say  $\overline{BC}$  intersecting  $\overline{AB}$  and  $\overline{AC}$  at  $D$  and  $E$ , respectively as shown in the figures, then :  $\frac{AD}{DB} = \frac{AE}{CE}$ .

and from the properties of the proportion we can deduce that:

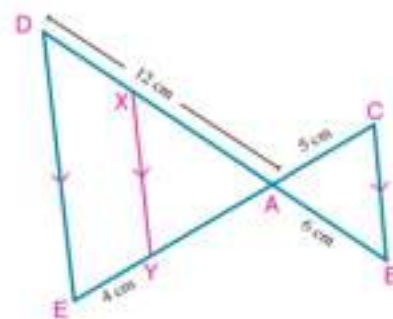
$$\frac{AD}{AB} = \frac{AE}{AC}, \quad \frac{AD}{DB} = \frac{AE}{CE}$$





### Example

- 2 In the figure opposite:  $\overline{CE} \cap \overline{BD} = \{A\}$ ,  $X \in \overline{AD}$   
 $Y \in \overline{AE}$  where  $\overline{XY} \parallel \overline{BC} \parallel \overline{DE}$ .  
 If  $AB = 6\text{cm}$ ,  $AC = 5\text{cm}$ ,  $AE = 12\text{cm}$ ,  $EY = 4\text{cm}$ .  
 Find the length of each of  $\overline{AE}$  and  $\overline{DX}$ .

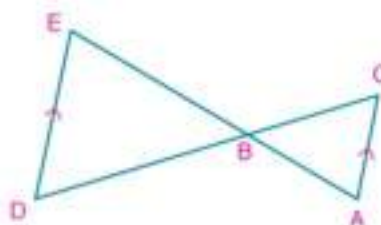


### Solution

$$\begin{aligned} \therefore \overline{ED} \parallel \overline{BC} & \quad , \overline{CE} \cap \overline{BD} = \{A\} \\ \therefore \frac{AD}{AB} = \frac{AE}{AC} & \quad \text{and } \frac{12}{6} = \frac{AE}{5} \quad \therefore AE = 10\text{cm} \\ \text{In } \triangle AED: & \\ \therefore \overline{XY} \parallel \overline{ED} & \quad \therefore \frac{AE}{EY} = \frac{AD}{DX} \\ \text{and } \frac{10}{4} = \frac{12}{DX} & \quad \therefore DX = 4.8\text{cm} \end{aligned}$$

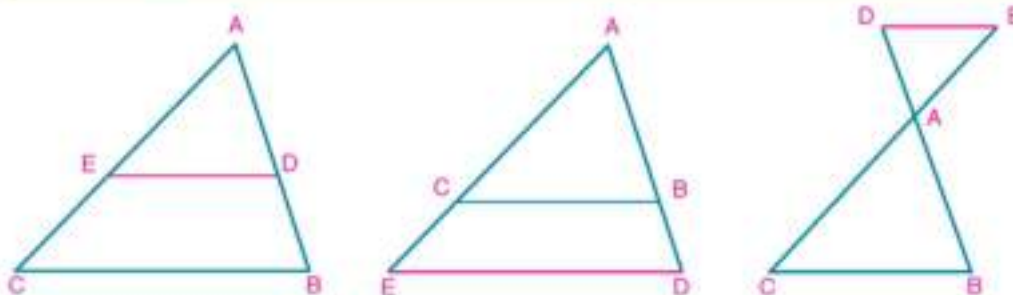
### Try to solve

- 2 In the figure opposite:  $\overline{DE} \parallel \overline{AC}$ ,  $\overline{AE} \cap \overline{CD} = \{B\}$
- A If:  $AB = 8\text{cm}$ ,  $BC = 9\text{cm}$ ,  $BE = 12\text{cm}$ .  
 Find the length of  $\overline{BD}$ .
- B If:  $AB = 6\text{cm}$ ,  $BE = 9\text{cm}$ ,  $CD = 18\text{cm}$ .  
 Find the length of  $\overline{BC}$ .



### Converse of theorem 1

If a line intersects two sides of a triangle and divides them into segments whose lengths are proportional, then it is parallel to the third side of the triangle.



In the previous three figures:  $ABC$  is a triangle,  $\overleftrightarrow{DE}$  intersects  $\overleftrightarrow{AB}$  at  $D$  and  $\overleftrightarrow{AC}$  at  $E$ ,

$$\frac{AD}{DB} = \frac{AE}{EC} \text{ then } \overleftrightarrow{DE} \parallel \overleftrightarrow{BC}$$

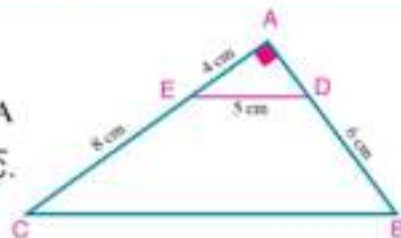
**Logical thinking:** Is  $\triangle ADE \sim \triangle ABC$ ? Why? - Is  $\angle ADE \equiv \angle B$ ? Explain your answer.

Write a proof for the converse of the theorem.

**Example**

- 3 In the figure opposite:  $\triangle ABC$  is a right angled triangle at  $A$

- A Prove that:  $\overline{DE} \parallel \overline{BC}$ . B Find the length of  $\overline{BC}$ .


**Solution**

- A  $\therefore$  the triangle  $ADE$  is a right angled triangle at  $A$

$$\therefore AD = \sqrt{25 - 16} = 3 \text{ cm} \quad (\text{Pythagorean theorem})$$

$$\therefore \frac{AD}{DB} = \frac{3}{6} = \frac{1}{2}, \quad \frac{AE}{EC} = \frac{4}{8} = \frac{1}{2}$$

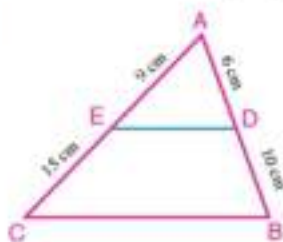
$$\therefore \frac{AD}{DB} = \frac{AE}{EC} \text{ then } \overline{ED} \parallel \overline{BC}.$$

- B  $\therefore \triangle ADE \sim \triangle ABC$  (why?)  $\therefore \frac{AD}{AB} = \frac{DE}{BC} = \frac{1}{3}$ ,  
then  $\frac{5}{BC} = \frac{1}{3}$   $\therefore BC = 15 \text{ cm}$

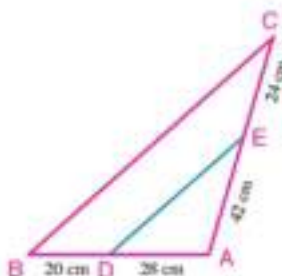
**Try to solve**

- 3 In each of the following figures, determine whether if  $\overline{DE} \parallel \overline{BC}$  or not?

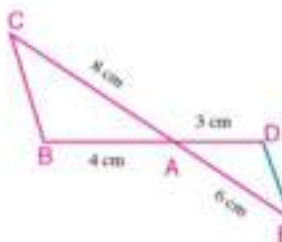
A



B



C


**Example**

- 4 ABCD is a quadrilateral in which  $X \in \overline{AB}$ ,  $Y \in \overline{AC}$  where  $\overline{XY} \parallel \overline{BC}$ , draw  $\overline{YZ} \parallel \overline{CD}$  and intersects  $\overline{AD}$  at  $Z$ . Prove that  $\overline{XZ} \parallel \overline{DB}$ .

**Solution**

In  $\triangle ABC$ :

$$\therefore \overline{XY} \parallel \overline{BC}$$

$$\therefore \frac{AX}{XB} = \frac{AY}{YC} \quad (1)$$

In  $\triangle ADC$ :

$$\therefore \overline{YZ} \parallel \overline{CD}$$

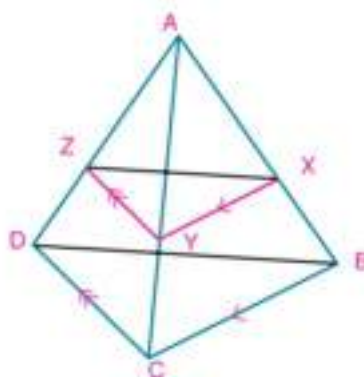
$$\therefore \frac{AZ}{ZD} = \frac{AY}{YC} \quad (2)$$

from (1) and (2) we deduce that:  $\frac{AX}{XB} = \frac{AZ}{ZD}$

In  $\triangle ABD$ :

$$\therefore \frac{AX}{XB} = \frac{AZ}{ZD}$$

$$\therefore \overline{XZ} \parallel \overline{DB}$$



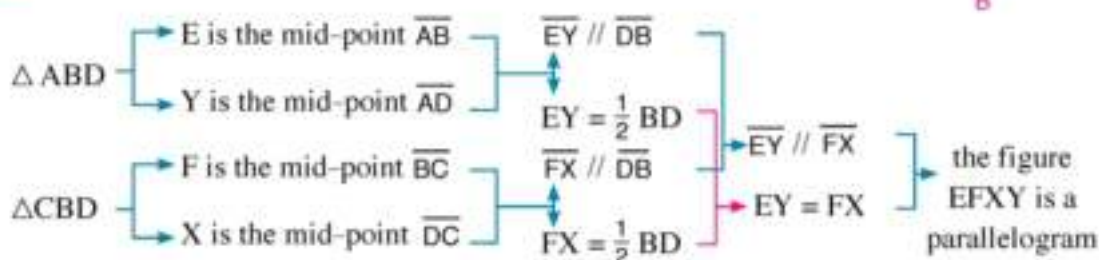
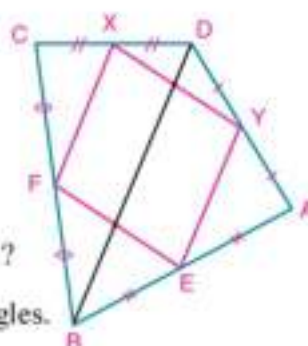
### Try to solve

- 4 ABCD is a quadrilateral, its diagonals intersect at M. draw  $\overline{ME} \parallel \overline{AD}$  and intersects  $\overline{AB}$  at E, draw  $\overline{MF} \parallel \overline{AD}$  and intersects  $\overline{BC}$  at F. prove that:  $\overline{EF} \parallel \overline{AC}$

**Logical thinking:** If E, F, X and Y are the mid-points of the sides  $\overline{AB}$ ,  $\overline{BC}$ ,  $\overline{CD}$  and  $\overline{DA}$  in the quadrilateral ABCD respectively. Is the figure EFX Y a parallelogram?

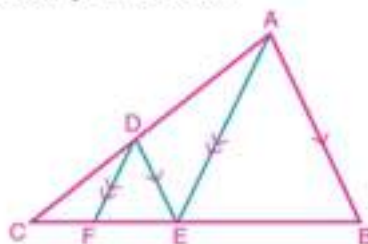
**Understand:** What is the request? When the figure EFX Y is a parallelogram?

**Plan:** form triangles, by drawing  $\overline{BD}$  which divides the figure into two triangles.



**Solve:** Write the suitable mathematical statements for proof and their justifications.

**Verify:** Search, Is  $\overline{EF} \parallel \overline{XY}$ ? explain your answer.



### Try to solve

- 5 In the figure opposite: ABC is a triangle,  $D \in \overline{AC}$ ,

$\overline{DE} \parallel \overline{AB}$ ,  $\overline{DF} \parallel \overline{AE}$

Draw a chart which show how to prove that  $(CE)^2 = CF \times CB$ .

### Example

- 5 **GPS:** to determine the location C, Surveyors measure and prepare the scheme opposite. Find the distance between the location C and the location A.

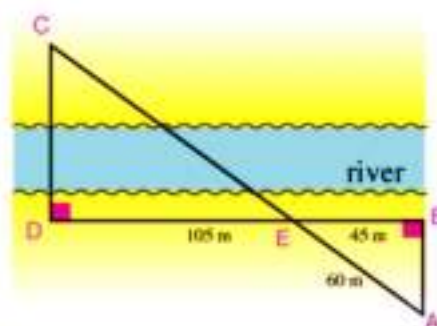
### Solution

$$\overline{AB} \perp \overline{BD}, \overline{CD} \perp \overline{BD} \therefore \overline{AB} \parallel \overline{CD}$$

$$\therefore \overline{AC} \cap \overline{BD} = \{E\}, \overline{AB} \parallel \overline{CD}$$

$$\therefore \frac{EA}{AC} = \frac{EB}{BD} \quad \text{then } \frac{60}{AC} = \frac{45}{45 + 105}$$

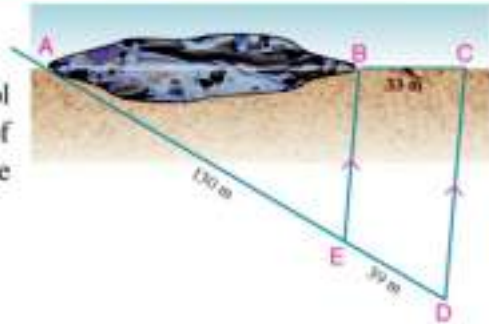
$$\therefore AC = \frac{60 \times 150}{45} = 200 \text{ metres.}$$





### Try to solve

- 6 **Pollution Control:** A team of pollution control determined the location of an oil spot on one of the beaches as in the figure opposite. Calculate the length of the oil spot.



### Think and discuss

You have noticed the possibility of using a parallel line to one of the sides of a triangle in many life applications. The figure opposite shows a door of one of the plant nurseries made from wooden parallel pieces and other transversals to them.



Is there a relation between the lengths of intercepted parts of these parallel pieces?

### Modeling

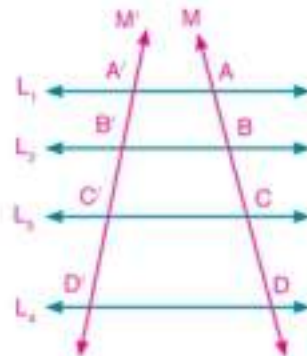
To investigate the existence of a relation or not, make a model to the problem (make a mathematical model to the problem) as follows:

- 1- Draw the lines  $L_1 \parallel L_2 \parallel L_3 \parallel L_4$  and  $M, M'$  are two transversals to them at  $A, B, C, D$  and  $A', B', C', D'$  as in the figure opposite.

- 2- Measure the lengths of line segments, and compare the following ratios:

$$\frac{AB}{A'B'} : \frac{BC}{B'C'} : \frac{CD}{C'D'} : \frac{AC}{A'C'}$$

What do you deduce?



### Talis' Theorem

**theorem 2** Given several coplanar parallel lines and two transversals, then the lengths of the corresponding segments on the transversals are proportional.

**Given:**  $L_1 \parallel L_2 \parallel L_3 \parallel L_4$  and  $M, M'$  are two transversals to them

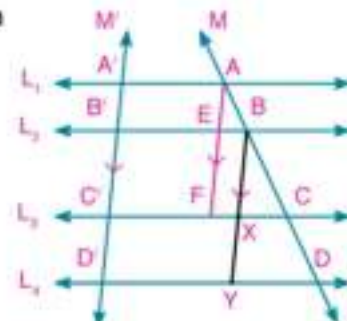
**R.t.p :**  $AB : BC : CD = A'B' : B'C' : C'D'$

**Proof :** Draw  $\overline{AF} \parallel M'$ , and intersects  $L_2$  at  $E$ , and  $L_3$  at  $F$ .

$\overline{BY} \parallel M'$  and intersects  $L_3$  at  $X$  and  $L_4$  at  $Y$ .

$\therefore \overline{AA'} \parallel \overline{EB'}$ ,  $\overline{AE} \parallel \overline{AB'}$

$\therefore AEB'A'$  is a parallelogram, then  $AE = A'B'$



Similarly:  $EF = B'C'$  ,  $BX = B'C'$  ,  $XY = CD'$

In  $\triangle ACF$ :

$$\therefore \overline{BE} \parallel \overline{CF}$$

$$\therefore \frac{AB}{BC} = \frac{AE}{EF}$$

$$\text{then: } \frac{AB}{BC} = \frac{A'B'}{B'C'}$$

$$\therefore \frac{AB}{A'B'} = \frac{BC}{B'C'}$$

(exchange the means) (1)

similarly  $\triangle BDY$ :

$$\therefore \frac{BC}{CD} = \frac{B'C'}{C'D'} \therefore \frac{BC}{B'C'} = \frac{CD}{C'D'}$$

(exchange the means) (2)

from (1) and (2) we get:

$$\frac{AB}{A'B'} = \frac{BC}{B'C'} = \frac{CD}{C'D'}$$

$$\therefore AB : BC : CD = A'B' : B'C' : C'D' \quad \text{Q.E.D.}$$

### Try to solve

7 Write the value of each of the following ratios, using the previous figure:

A  $\frac{AC}{CD}$

B  $\frac{AC}{CB}$

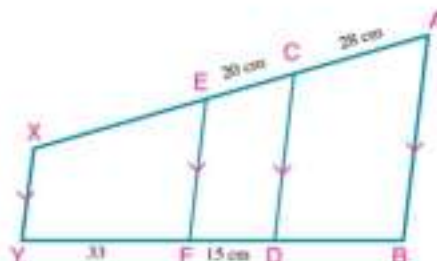
C  $\frac{BD}{DA}$

D  $\frac{AD'}{A'B'}$

E  $\frac{AB}{A'B'}$

### Example

6 In the figure opposite:  $\overline{AB} \parallel \overline{CD} \parallel \overline{EF} \parallel \overline{XY}$ ,  
 $AC = 28\text{cm}$ ,  $CE = 20\text{cm}$ ,  $DF = 15\text{cm}$ ,  $FY = 33\text{cm}$ .  
 Find the length of each of:  $\overline{BD}$  and  $\overline{EX}$



### Solution

$$\therefore \overline{AB} \parallel \overline{CD} \parallel \overline{EF} \parallel \overline{XY}$$

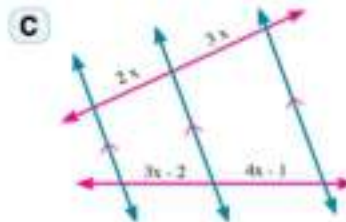
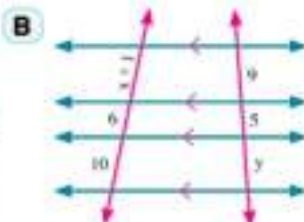
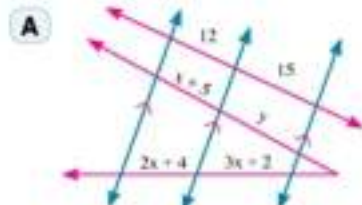
$$\therefore \frac{AC}{BD} = \frac{CE}{DF} = \frac{EX}{FY}$$

$$\frac{28}{BD} = \frac{20}{15} = \frac{EX}{33}$$

$$\therefore BD = 21\text{cm} , EX = 44\text{cm}.$$

### Try to solve

8 In each of the following figures the red lines intersect parallel lines. Calculate the numerical values of  $x$  and  $y$ . (Lengths are measured in centimetres)

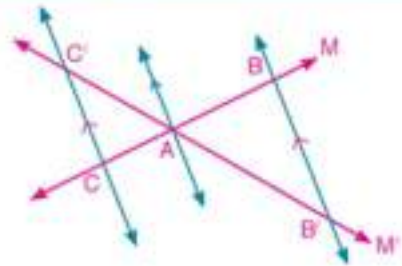


### Special cases

- 1- If the two lines  $M, M'$  intersect at the point  $A$

and:  $\overleftrightarrow{BB'} \parallel \overleftrightarrow{CC'}$ , then:  $\frac{AB}{AC} = \frac{AB'}{AC'}$

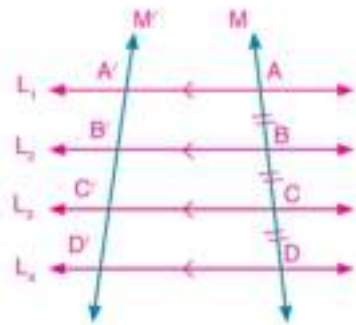
and conversely: If:  $\frac{AB}{AC} = \frac{AB'}{AC'}$   
then:  $\overleftrightarrow{BB'} \parallel \overleftrightarrow{CC'}$



### Talis's Special theorem

- 2- If the lengths of the segments on the transversals are equal, then the lengths of the segments on any other transversal will be also equal.

In the figure opposite  $L_1 \parallel L_2 \parallel L_3 \parallel L_4$  and  $M, M'$  are two transversals to them and  $AB = BC = CD$  then:  $A'B' = B'C' = C'D'$



### Example

- 7 In the figure opposite, find the numerical value of  $x$  and  $y$ .

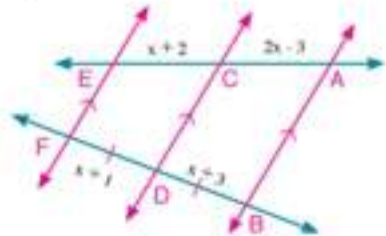
#### Solution

$\because \overline{AB} \parallel \overline{CD} \parallel \overline{EF}$ ,  $BD = DF$

$\therefore AC = CE$

then:  $2x - 3 = x + 2 \quad \therefore x = 5$

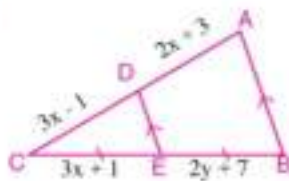
$\because BD = DF, x = 5 \quad \therefore y + 3 = 5 + 1 \quad \therefore y = 3$



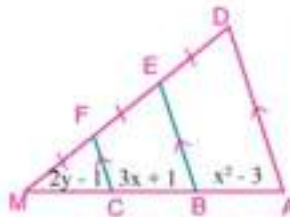
### Try to solve

- 9 In each of the following, find the numerical values of  $x, y$ . (lengths are measured in centimetres)

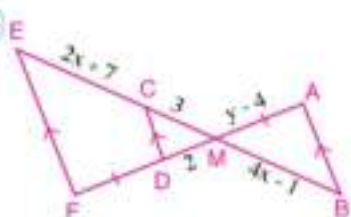
A



B



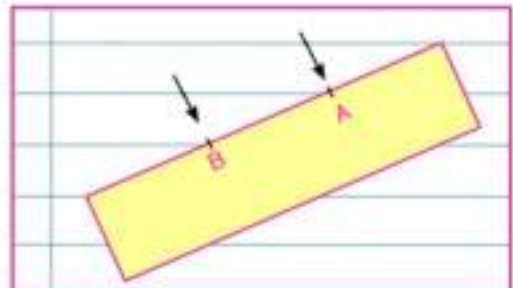
C



### Think

Yousef wanted to divide a strip of paper into 3 equal parts in length. He placed it on a paper on his notebook, as in the figure opposite, and determined two points of division  $A$  and  $B$ .

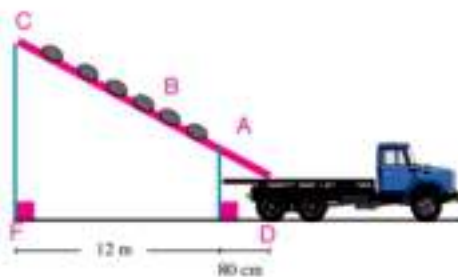
Is the division of Yousef's strip correct? Explain your answer. Use your geometric instruments to verify your answer.





### Example

- 8 Industry:** Fertilizer packages produced from one of the factories are transferred by sliding on a tube that is inclined and carried on to trucks to the centre of distributions as in the figure opposite. If D, E and F are the projections of the points A, B and C on the horizontal respectively,  $AB = 1.2\text{m}$ ,  $DE = 80\text{cm}$ ,  $EF = 12\text{m}$ . Find the length of the tube to the nearest metre.



### Solution

$\therefore$  D, E and F are projections to the points A, B and C on the horizontal  $\therefore \overline{AD} \parallel \overline{BE} \parallel \overline{CF}$

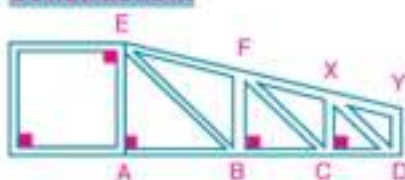
$\therefore \overline{AD} \parallel \overline{BE} \parallel \overline{CF}$ ,  $\overline{AC}$ ,  $\overline{DF}$  are two transversals to them  $\therefore \frac{AC}{AB} = \frac{DF}{DE} \therefore \frac{AC}{1.2} = \frac{12 + 0.8}{0.8}$

$$\therefore AC = \frac{1.2 \times 12.8}{0.8} = 19.2 \text{ m}$$

$\therefore AC \approx 19$  metres

### Try to solve

- 10 A Construction:**

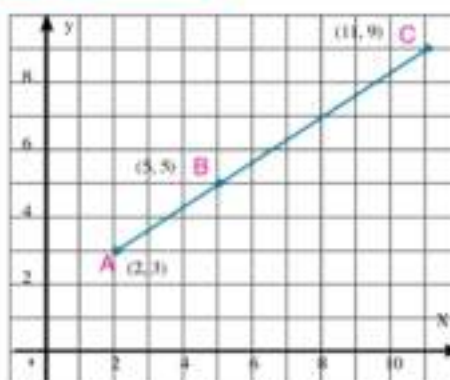


If  $AB = 180\text{cm}$ ,  $EF = 2\text{m}$

$AB : BC : CD = 5 : 4 : 3$

Find the length of  $\overline{EY}$  and  $\overline{CD}$

- B Logical thinking**

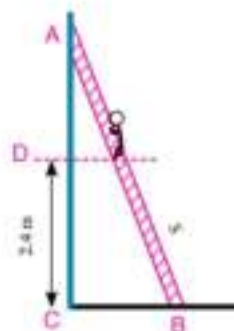


From the figure, find the value of  $\frac{AB}{BC}$  in different methods, if possible.

Did you get the same result?

### Check your understanding

**Problem solving:** A ladder of length 4.1 metres rests by its upper end A on a vertical wall and with its lower end B on a horizontal rough ground. If the lower end is 90 cm apart from the wall. Calculate the distance which a man ascends on the ladder until it becomes at 2.4m high from the ground.



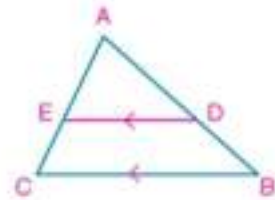


## Exercises (3 - 1)



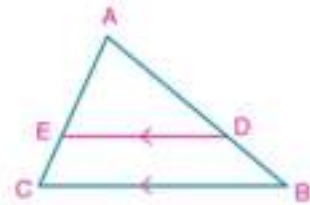
- 1 In the figure opposite:  $\overline{ED} \parallel \overline{BC}$ . Complete:

- A if  $\frac{AD}{DB} = \frac{5}{3}$  then :  $\frac{AB}{BD} = \frac{\quad}{\quad}$  and  $\frac{CE}{ED} = \frac{\quad}{\quad}$   
 B if  $\frac{AE}{AC} = \frac{4}{7}$ , then :  $\frac{CE}{EA} = \frac{\quad}{\quad}$  and  $\frac{BD}{AB} = \frac{\quad}{\quad}$

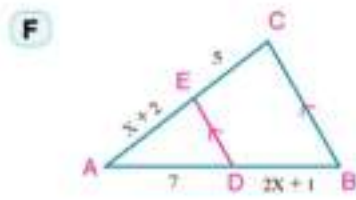
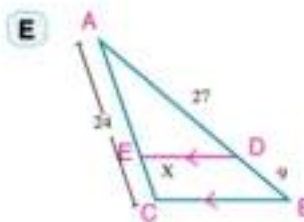
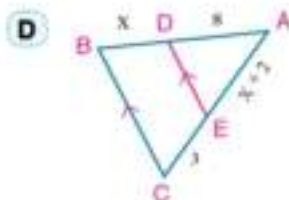
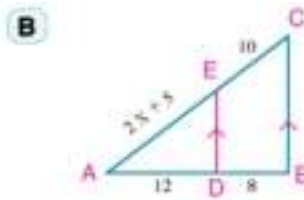
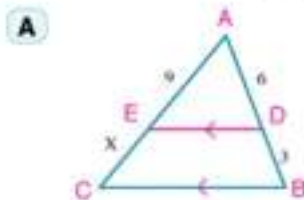


- 2 In the figure opposite:  $\overline{DE} \parallel \overline{BC}$ . Determine the correct statements in each of the following:

- A  $\frac{AB}{DB} = \frac{AE}{EC}$       B  $\frac{AD}{AE} = \frac{BD}{EC}$   
 C  $\frac{AB}{BD} = \frac{AC}{AE}$       D  $\frac{AB}{BD} = \frac{AC}{CE}$   
 E  $\frac{AC}{AD} = \frac{AB}{AE}$       F  $\frac{CE}{BD} = \frac{AC}{AB}$



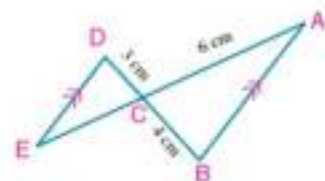
- 3 In each of the following figures:  $\overline{DE} \parallel \overline{BC}$ . Find the numerical value of  $x$  (length in centimetres).



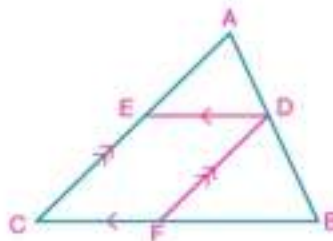
- 4 In the figure opposite:  $\overline{AB} \parallel \overline{DE}$  and  $\overline{AE} \cap \overline{BD} = \{C\}$

$AC = 6\text{cm}$ ,  $BC = 4\text{cm}$  and  $CD = 3\text{cm}$ .

Find the length  $\overline{AE}$

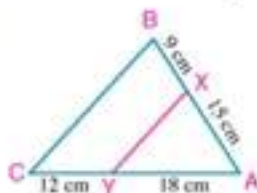


- 5  $\overline{XY} \cap \overline{ZL} = \{M\}$ , where  $\overline{XZ} \parallel \overline{LY}$ . If  $XM = 9\text{cm}$ ,  $YM = 15\text{cm}$  and  $ZL = 36\text{cm}$ , find the length of  $\overline{ZM}$ .
- 6 For each of the following, use the figure opposite and the given data to find the value of  $x$ :
- A  $AD = 4$ ,  $BD = 8$ ,  $CE = 6$  and  $AE = x$ .
- B  $AE = x$ ,  $EC = 5$ ,  $AD = x - 2$  and  $BD = 3$ .
- C  $AB = 21$ ,  $BF = 8$ ,  $FC = 6$  and  $AD = x$ .
- D  $AD = x$ ,  $BF = x + 5$  and  $2DB = 3FC = 12$ .

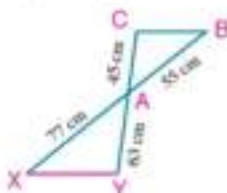


- 7 In each of the following figures, Is  $\overline{XY} \parallel \overline{BC}$ ?

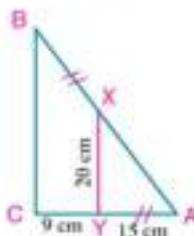
A



B



C



- 8 XYZ is a triangle in which  $XY = 14\text{cm}$ ,  $XZ = 21\text{cm}$  and  $L \in \overline{XY}$  where  $XL = 5.6\text{cm}$  and  $M \in \overline{XZ}$  where  $XM = 8.4\text{cm}$ . Prove that  $\overline{LM} \parallel \overline{YZ}$ .
- 9 In the triangle ABC,  $D \in \overline{AB}$ ,  $E \in \overline{AC}$  and  $5AE = 4EC$ . If  $AD = 10\text{cm}$  and  $DB = 8\text{cm}$ . Is  $\overline{DE} \parallel \overline{BC}$ ? Explain your answer.
- 10 ABCD is a cyclic quadrilateral, its diagonals are intersected at E. If  $AE = 6\text{cm}$ ,  $BE = 13\text{cm}$ ,  $EF = 10\text{cm}$  and  $ED = 7.8\text{cm}$ . prove that ABCD is a trapezium.
- 11 Prove that the line segment drawn between two mid points of two sides in a triangle is parallel to the third side and its length is equal to a half of this side.
- 12 ABC is a triangle,  $D \in \overline{AB}$  where  $3AD = 2DB$  and  $E \in \overline{AC}$  where  $5CE = 3AC$  and  $\overline{AX}$  is drawn to intersect  $\overline{BC}$  at X. If  $AF = 8\text{cm}$  and  $AX = 20\text{cm}$  where  $F \in \overline{AX}$ . Prove that the points D, F and E are collinear.
- 13 ABC is a triangle,  $D \in \overline{BC}$ , where  $\frac{BD}{DC} = \frac{3}{4}$  and  $E \in \overline{AD}$ , where  $\frac{AE}{ED} = \frac{3}{7}$ .  $\overline{AE}$  is drawn to intersect  $\overline{AB}$  at X,  $\overline{DY} \parallel \overline{CX}$  and intersects  $\overline{AB}$  at Y. Prove that  $AX = BY$ .
- 14 ABCD is a rectangle, its diagonals are intersected at M. E is the mid point of  $\overline{AM}$ , F is the midpoint of  $\overline{MC}$ .  $\overline{DE}$  is drawn to intersect  $\overline{AB}$  at X and  $\overline{DF}$  is drawn to intersect  $\overline{BC}$  at Y. Prove that:  $\overline{XY} \parallel \overline{AC}$ .



- 15 Write what each of the following ratios equals using the figure opposite:

A  $\frac{AB}{BC} = \frac{DE}{\quad}$

B  $\frac{AC}{BC} = \frac{\quad}{EF}$

C  $\frac{MA}{AB} = \frac{MD}{\quad}$

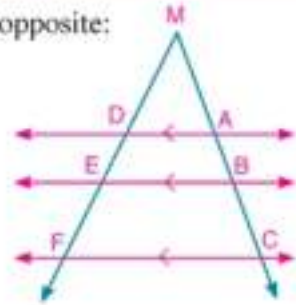
D  $\frac{AC}{AB} = \frac{\quad}{DE}$

E  $\frac{MB}{AB} = \frac{\quad}{DE}$

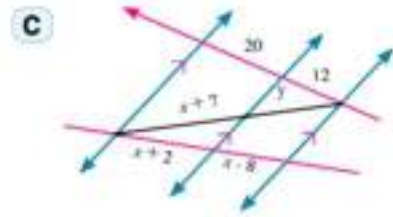
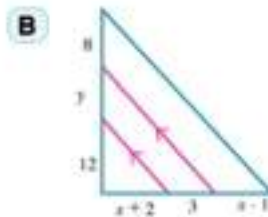
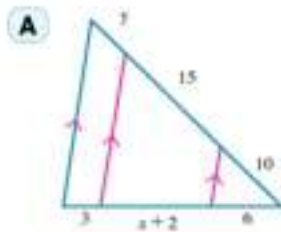
F  $\frac{MC}{AC} = \frac{MF}{\quad}$

G  $\frac{BC}{MB} = \frac{EF}{\quad}$

H  $\frac{DF}{MF} = \frac{AC}{\quad}$



- 16 In each of the following figures, calculate the numerical values of  $x$  and  $y$  (lengths are measured in centimetres)



- 17 In the figure opposite:

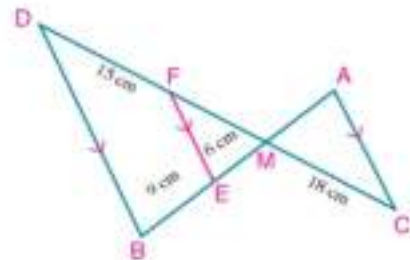
$\overline{AB} \cap \overline{CD} = \{M\}$ ,  $E \in \overline{MB}$ ,

$F \in \overline{MD}$  and  $\overline{AC} \parallel \overline{FE} \parallel \overline{DB}$ .

Find:

A The length of  $\overline{MF}$ .

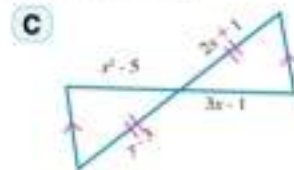
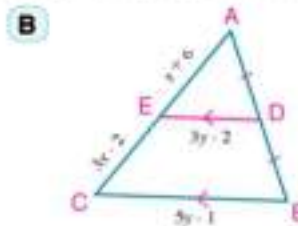
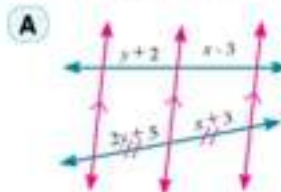
B The length of  $\overline{AM}$ .



- 18  $\overleftrightarrow{AB} \cap \overleftrightarrow{CD} = \{E\}$ ,  $x \in \overline{AB}$ ,  $y \in \overline{CD}$  and  $\overline{XY} \parallel \overline{BD} \parallel \overline{AC}$

Prove that:  $AX \times ED = CY \times EB$ .

- 19 In each of the following figures, calculate the numerical values of  $x$  and  $y$ :



- 20 ABCD is a quadrilateral in which  $\overline{AB} \parallel \overline{CD}$ , its diagonals intersect at M and E is the mid point of  $\overline{BC}$ .  $\overline{EF} \parallel \overline{BA}$  and intersects  $\overline{BD}$  at X,  $\overline{AC}$  at Y and  $\overline{AD}$  at F. prove that:

A  $EY = \frac{1}{2} AB$ .

B  $\frac{AY}{CM} = \frac{BX}{DM}$

# 3 - 2

## Angle Bisectors and Proportional Parts

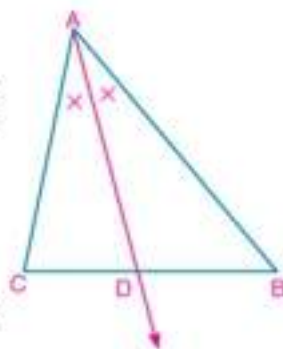
### You will learn



#### Group work

- Properties of bisectors of angles of triangles.
- Use proportion to calculate the lengths of line segments resulting from bisecting an angle in a triangle.
- Modelling and solving life problems including bisectors of angles of triangle

- 1- Draw the triangle ABC, and draw  $\overrightarrow{AD}$  to intersect  $\overline{BC}$  at D.
- 2- Measure each of  $\overline{BD}$ ,  $\overline{CD}$ ,  $\overline{AB}$ ,  $\overline{AC}$ .
- 3- Calculate each of the two ratios  $\frac{BD}{DC}$ ,  $\frac{BA}{AC}$  and compare between them.  
What do you deduce?
- 4- Repeat the previous work many times. Does your deduction verify? Express your deduction.



### Key-terms

- Bisector
- Interior Bisector
- Exterior Bisector
- Perpendicular

### Bisector of an Angle of a Triangle

**theorem 3**

The bisector of the interior or exterior angle of a triangle at any vertex divides the opposite base of the triangle internally or externally into two parts the ratio of their lengths is equal to ratio of the lengths of the other two sides of the triangle.

Figure (A)

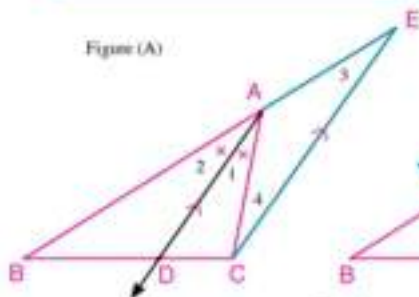
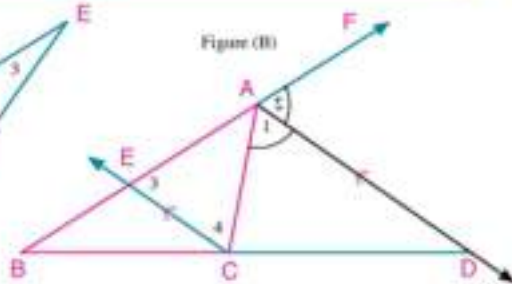


Figure (B)



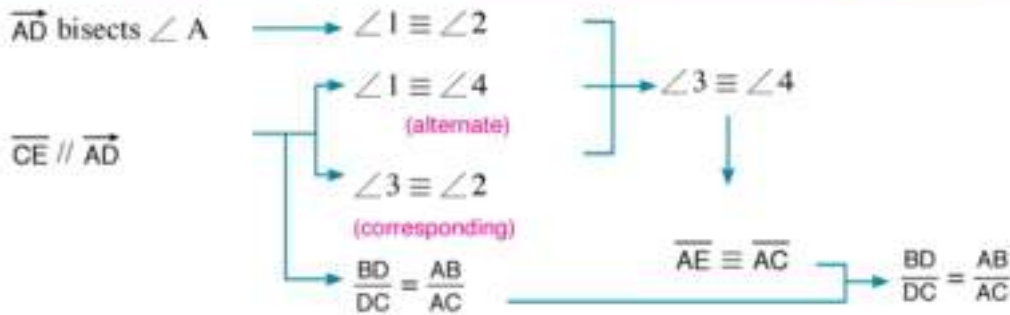
### Materials

- Geometric instruments for drawing.
- Computer and Graph programs.
- Data sheet.

**Given:** ABC is a triangle,  $\overrightarrow{AD}$  bisects  $\angle BAC$  (internally in figure A, externally in figure B).

$$\text{R.t.p. : } \frac{BD}{DC} = \frac{AB}{AC}$$

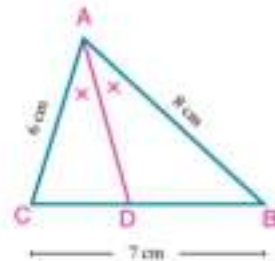
**Proof :** Draw  $\overrightarrow{CE} \parallel \overrightarrow{AD}$  and intersects  $\overline{BA}$  at E. Follow the following chart and write the proof.


**Example**

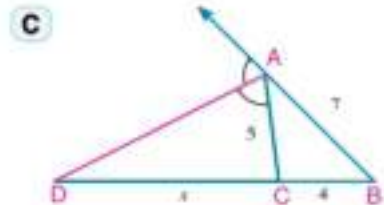
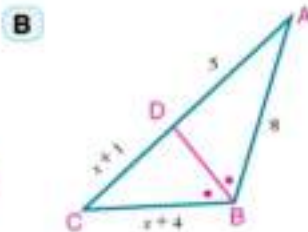
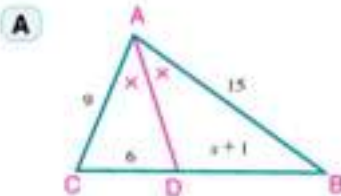
- 1 ABC is a triangle in which  $AB = 8\text{cm}$ ,  $AC = 6\text{cm}$ ,  $BC = 7\text{cm}$ ,  $\overrightarrow{AD}$  bisects  $\angle BAC$  and intersects  $\overline{BC}$  at D. Find the length of  $\overline{DB}$ ,  $\overline{DC}$

**Solution**

$$\begin{aligned}
 \because \overrightarrow{AD} \text{ bisects } \angle BAC & \therefore \frac{DB}{DC} = \frac{AB}{AC} & \text{(theorem)} \\
 \because AB = 8\text{cm}, AC = 6\text{cm} & \therefore \frac{BD}{DC} = \frac{8}{6} = \frac{4}{3} \\
 \because BC = BD + DC = 7\text{cm} & \therefore \frac{DB}{7 - BD} = \frac{4}{3} & \text{(cross multiplication)} \\
 3BD = 28 - 4BD & \therefore BD = 4\text{cm}, CD = 3\text{cm}
 \end{aligned}$$


**Try to solve**

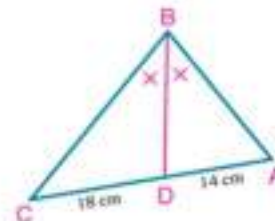
- 1 In each of the following figures, find the numerical value of  $x$  (lengths are measured in centimetres)


**Example**

- 2 ABC is a triangle. Draw  $\overrightarrow{DB}$  bisects  $\angle B$ , intersects  $\overline{AC}$  at D, where  $AD = 14\text{cm}$ ,  $DC = 18\text{cm}$ . If the perimeter of  $\triangle ABC$  equals  $80\text{cm}$ , find the length of each of:  $\overline{BC}$ ,  $\overline{AC}$ .

**Solution**

$$\begin{aligned}
 \text{In } \triangle ABC & \therefore \frac{AB}{BC} = \frac{AD}{DC} \\
 \therefore \frac{AB}{BC} = \frac{14}{18} = \frac{7}{9} \\
 \therefore \text{the perimeter of } \triangle ABC = 80\text{cm}, AC = 14 + 18 = 32\text{cm} \\
 \therefore AB + BC = 80 - 32 = 48\text{cm}
 \end{aligned}$$





$$\therefore \frac{AB}{BC} = \frac{7}{9}$$

$$\text{then } \frac{48}{BC} = \frac{16}{9}$$

$$\therefore \frac{AB+BC}{BC} = \frac{7+9}{9}$$

(properties of proportion)

$$\therefore BC = 27\text{cm}, \quad AB = 21\text{cm}$$

### Try to solve

- 2- ABC is a right angled triangle at B. draw  $\overrightarrow{AD}$  bisects  $\angle A$ , and intersects  $\overline{BC}$  at D. If the length of  $\overline{BD}$  equals 24cm,  $BA : AC = 3 : 5$ , find the perimeter of  $\triangle ABC$ .

### Important note

- 1- In the triangle ABC where  $AB \neq AC$ :

If  $\overrightarrow{AD}$  bisects  $\angle BAC$ ,

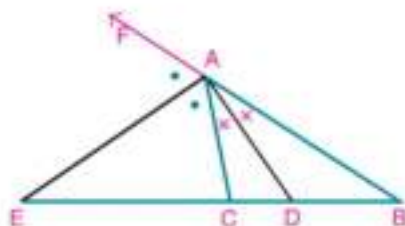
$\overrightarrow{AE}$  bisects the exterior angle of the triangle at A.

$$\text{then: } \frac{DB}{DC} = \frac{AB}{AC}, \quad \frac{BE}{EC} = \frac{AB}{AC}$$

$$\text{then } \frac{DB}{DC} = \frac{BE}{EC}$$

i.e.  $\overline{BC}$  is divided internally at D and externally at E by the same ratio

then the two bisectors  $\overrightarrow{AD}$  and  $\overrightarrow{AE}$  are perpendicular. why?



- 2- If  $AB > AC$  and the bisector of  $\angle A$  intersects  $\overline{BC}$  at D where  $BD > DC$ . The bisector of the exterior angle of the triangle at A intersects  $\overline{BC}$  at E where  $BE > EC$ .

### Critical thinking

- What happens to the point B, when AC is enlarged?
- When does the point D lie if  $AC = AB$ ? and what is the position of  $\overrightarrow{AE}$  w.r. to  $\overline{BC}$  at then?
- What is the relation between DC and DB, when  $AC > AB$ ? Where does the point E lie at then? Compare your answer with your classmate.

### Example

- 3- ABC is a triangle in which  $AB = 6\text{ cm}$ ,  $AC = 4\text{ cm}$ ,  $BC = 5\text{ cm}$ .  $\overrightarrow{AD}$  bisects  $\angle A$  and intersects  $\overline{BC}$  at D,  $\overrightarrow{AE}$  bisects the exterior angle at A and intersects  $\overline{BC}$  at E. Calculate the length of  $\overline{DE}$ .

### Solution

$\therefore \overrightarrow{AD}$  bisects  $\angle A$  and  $\overrightarrow{AE}$  bisects the exterior angle at A.

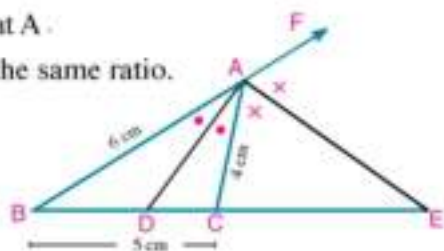
$\therefore$  D, and E divide  $\overline{BC}$  internally and externally by the same ratio.

$$\text{i.e. } \frac{BD}{DC} = \frac{BE}{EC} = \frac{BA}{AC}$$

$$\therefore \frac{BD}{DC} = \frac{BE}{EC} = \frac{6}{4} = \frac{3}{2}$$

$$\therefore BC = BD + DC = 5, \quad BE - EC = BC = 5$$

From the properties of proportion, we get



$$\frac{BD + DC}{DC} = \frac{3 + 2}{2}$$

$$\frac{BE \cdot EC}{EC} = \frac{3 \cdot 2}{2}$$

$$\text{then } DE = DC + CE$$

$$\frac{5}{DC} = \frac{5}{2} \therefore DC = 2$$

$$\frac{5}{EC} = \frac{1}{2} \therefore EC = 10$$

$$DE = 2 + 10 = 12\text{cm}$$

### Try to solve

- 3 ABC is a triangle in which,  $AB = 3\text{cm}$ ,  $BC = 7\text{cm}$ ,  $CA = 6\text{cm}$ .  $\overrightarrow{AD}$  bisects  $\angle A$ , and intersects  $\overline{BC}$  at D,  $\overrightarrow{AE}$  bisects the exterior angle of the triangle at A and intersects  $\overline{CB}$  at E.

- A Prove that  $\overline{AB}$  is a median in the triangle ACE.  
 B Finding the ratio of area of ADE to the area of ACE.

### Finding the length of the interior and the exterior bisectors of an angle of a triangle

well known problem

If  $\overrightarrow{AD}$  bisects  $\angle A$  in  $\triangle ABC$  internally and intersects  $\overline{BC}$  at D  
 then:  $AD = \sqrt{AB \times AC - BD \times DC}$

Given: ABC is a triangle,  $\overrightarrow{AD}$  bisects  $\angle BAC$  internally,  $\overrightarrow{AD} \cap \overline{BC} = \{D\}$

R.t.p.:  $(AD)^2 = AB \times AC - BD \times DC$

Proof: Draw a circle passes through  $\triangle ABC$  and intersects  $\overrightarrow{AD}$  at E, draw  $\overline{BE}$

$$\text{then: } \triangle ACD \sim \triangle AEB \quad (\text{why?}), \quad \frac{AD}{AB} = \frac{AC}{AE}$$

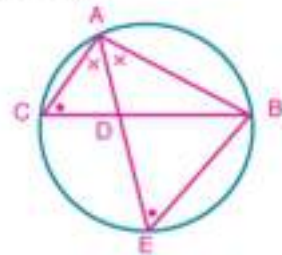
$$\therefore AD \times AE = AB \times AC$$

$$AD \times (AD + DE) = AB \times AC$$

$$(AD)^2 = AB \times AC - AD \times DE$$

$$(AD)^2 = AB \times AC - BD \times DC$$

$$\text{i.e.: } AD = \sqrt{AB \times AC - BD \times DC}$$



Remember

$$AD \times DE = BD \times DC$$

### Example

- 4 ABC is a triangle in which  $AB = 27\text{cm}$ ,  $AC = 15\text{cm}$ .  $\overrightarrow{AD}$  bisects  $\angle A$  and intersects  $\overline{BC}$  at D. If  $BD = 18\text{cm}$ . Calculate the length of  $\overline{AD}$ .

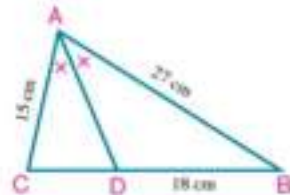
### Solution

$$\therefore \overrightarrow{AD} \text{ bisects } \angle BAC \quad \therefore \frac{BD}{DC} = \frac{AB}{AC}$$

$$\text{then } \frac{18}{DC} = \frac{27}{15} \quad \therefore DC = 10\text{cm}$$

$$\therefore AD = \sqrt{AB \times AC - BD \times DC}$$

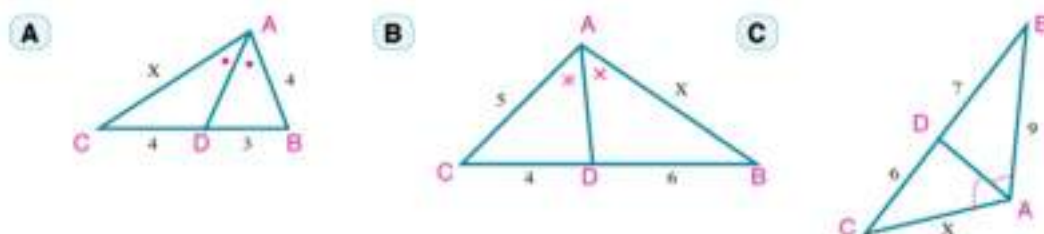
$$\therefore AD = \sqrt{27 \times 15 - 18 \times 10} = \sqrt{225} = 15\text{ cm}$$



### Try to solve

- 4 In each of the following figures (lengths are measured in centimetres). Calculate the

value of  $x$  and the length of  $\overline{AD}$

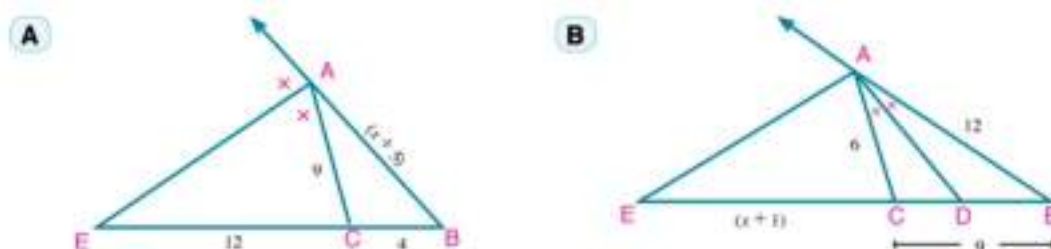


**Notice that:** In the figure opposite  $\overrightarrow{AE}$  bisects  $\angle BAC$  externally and intersects  $\overrightarrow{BC}$  at E. then:

$$AE = \sqrt{BE \times EC - AB \times AC}$$

### Try to solve

- 5 In each of the following figures (lengths are measured in centimetres). Calculate the value of  $x$ , and the length of  $\overline{AE}$



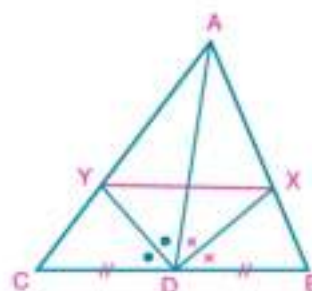
### Example

- 5 In the figure opposite:  $\overline{AD}$  is a median in  $\triangle ABC$

$\overrightarrow{DX}$  bisects  $\angle ADB$ , and intersects  $\overline{AB}$  at X.

$\overrightarrow{DY}$  bisects  $\angle ADC$  and intersects  $\overline{AC}$  at Y.

Prove that:  $\overline{XY} \parallel \overline{BC}$ .



### Solution

In  $\triangle ADB$ :  $\therefore \overrightarrow{DX}$  bisects  $\angle ADB$

$$\therefore \frac{AD}{DB} = \frac{AX}{XB} \quad (1)$$

In  $\triangle ADC$ :  $\therefore \overrightarrow{DY}$  bisects  $\angle ADC$

$$\therefore \frac{AD}{DC} = \frac{AY}{YC} \quad (2)$$

In  $\triangle ABC$ :  $\therefore \overline{AD}$  is a median

$$\therefore DB = DC \quad (3)$$

from (1), (2) and (3)  $\frac{AX}{XB} = \frac{AY}{YC}$

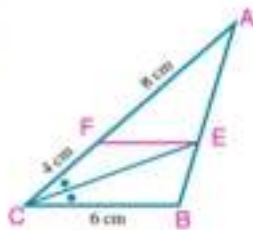
then  $\overline{XY} \parallel \overline{BC}$ .



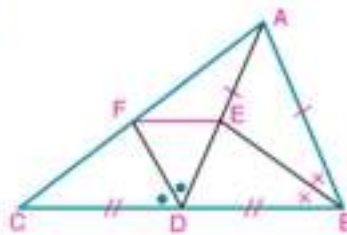
### Try to solve

- 6 In each of the following figures, prove that:  $\overline{EF} \parallel \overline{BC}$

A



B



### Logical thinking

In the figure opposite  $D \in \overline{BC}$ .

How can you draw  $\overrightarrow{CE}$  to intersect  $\overrightarrow{BA}$  at E to calculate the ratio  $\frac{DB}{DC}$ ?

If  $\frac{BD}{DC} = \frac{BA}{AC}$ . What do you deduce?

### Special cases

- 1- In  $\triangle ABC$ :

If  $D \in \overline{BC}$ , where  $\frac{BD}{DC} = \frac{BA}{AC}$

then:  $\overrightarrow{AD}$  bisects  $\angle BAC$

If  $E \in \overrightarrow{BC}$ ,  $E \notin \overline{BC}$ , where  $\frac{BE}{EC} = \frac{BA}{AC}$

then:  $\overrightarrow{AE}$  bisects the exterior angle of  $\triangle ABC$  at A, and it is defined by the converse of the previous theorem.

- 2- In the figure opposite:

$\overrightarrow{BE}$ ,  $\overrightarrow{CE}$  are bisectors of angles B and C intersecting at the point  $E \in \overrightarrow{AD}$ .

What do you deduce?

**Fact:** The bisectors of angles of a triangle are concurrent.

### Example

- 6 ABC is a triangle in which  $AB = 18\text{cm}$ ,  $BC = 15\text{cm}$ ,  $AC = 12\text{cm}$ ,  $D \in \overline{BC}$ , where  $BD = 9\text{cm}$ ,  $\overrightarrow{AE} \perp \overrightarrow{AD}$  and intersects  $\overrightarrow{BC}$  at E. prove that  $\overrightarrow{AD}$  bisects  $\angle BAC$ , then find the length of  $\overline{CE}$ .



### Solution

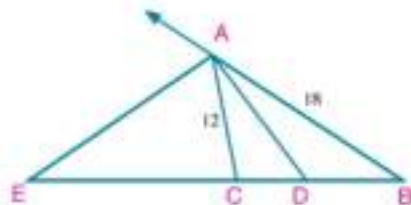
In  $\triangle ABC$ :  $\frac{AB}{AC} = \frac{18}{12} = \frac{3}{2}$

$CD = BC - BD = 15 - 9 = 6\text{cm}$

$$\therefore \frac{BD}{DC} = \frac{9}{6} = \frac{3}{2}$$

$$\therefore \frac{BD}{DC} = \frac{AB}{AC} \quad \overrightarrow{AD} \text{ bisects } \angle BAC$$

$\therefore \overrightarrow{AE} \perp \overrightarrow{AD}$  and intersects  $\overrightarrow{BC}$  at E



$\therefore \overrightarrow{AE}$  bisects the exterior angle of  $\triangle ABC$  at A

$$\text{then } \frac{BE}{EC} = \frac{AB}{AC}$$

$$\therefore BE = BC + CE \quad \therefore \frac{15 + CE}{CE} = \frac{18}{12}, \quad CE = 30\text{cm}$$

### Try to solve

- 7 ABCD is a quadrilateral in which  $AB = 18\text{cm}$ ,  $BC = 12\text{cm}$ .  $E \in \overline{AD}$  where  $2AE = 3ED$ ,  $\overrightarrow{EF} \parallel \overline{DC}$  and intersects  $\overline{AC}$  at F. prove that  $\overrightarrow{BF}$  bisects  $\angle ABC$ .

### Example

- 7  $\overline{AB}$  is a diameter of a circle,  $\overline{AC}$  is a chord in it.  $\overrightarrow{CD}$  is a tangent drawn to the circle at C, and intersects  $\overrightarrow{AB}$  at D.

if  $E \in \overline{AB}$  where  $\frac{DB}{BE} = \frac{DC}{CE}$  prove that:

A  $\overrightarrow{AC}$  bisects the exterior angle of CDE at C.

B  $\frac{DA}{DB} = \frac{AE}{BE}$

### Solution

$$\therefore \frac{DB}{BE} = \frac{DC}{CE}$$

(1)

$\therefore \overrightarrow{CB}$  bisects  $\angle C$  in  $\triangle DCE$ .

$\therefore \overline{AB}$  is a diameter in the circle

$\therefore m(\angle ACB) = 90^\circ$  then  $\overrightarrow{CA} \perp \overrightarrow{CB}$

$\therefore \overrightarrow{CB}$  bisects  $\angle C$  in  $\triangle ABC$

$\therefore \overrightarrow{CA}$  is the bisector of the exterior angle at C

(the bisectors of the angle are perpendicular) (first required)

$$\text{then } \frac{DA}{AE} = \frac{DC}{CE}$$

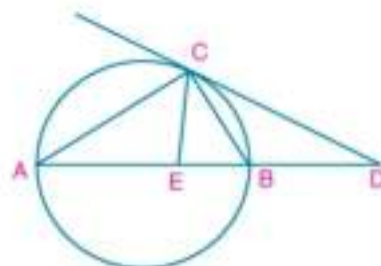
(2)

from (1) and (2)

$$\text{we get: } \frac{DA}{AE} = \frac{DB}{BE}$$

$$\therefore \frac{DA}{AE} = \frac{AE}{BE}$$

(second required)



### Try to solve

- 8 Two circles M and N touch externally at A. A straight line is drawn parallel to  $\overline{MN}$  and intersects the circle M at B and C and the circle N at D, E respectively. if  $\overrightarrow{BM} \cap \overrightarrow{EN} = \{F\}$ , prove that  $\overrightarrow{AF}$  bisects  $\angle MFN$ .

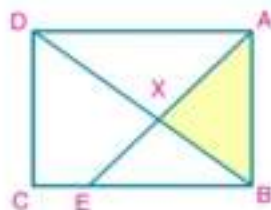


### Check your understanding

**problem solving:** The figure opposite shows a rectangular piece of land is divided into four different parts by the two lines  $\overrightarrow{BD}$  and  $\overrightarrow{AE}$ , Where  $E \in \overline{BC}$ ,  $\overrightarrow{BD} \cap \overrightarrow{AE} = \{X\}$ .

If  $AB = BE = 42\text{metres}$ ,  $AD = 56\text{ metres}$ .

Calculate the area of the piece ABX in square metres and the length of  $\overline{AX}$ .





Exercises (3 - 2)



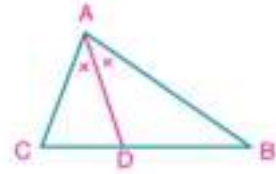
- 1 In the figure opposite:  $\overrightarrow{AD}$  bisects  $\angle A$ . Complete:

A  $\frac{BD}{DC} = \frac{AB}{AC}$

B  $\frac{AC}{AB} = \frac{DC}{BD}$

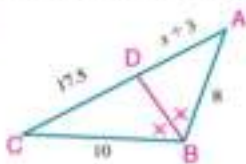
C  $\frac{BD}{BA} = \frac{DC}{CA}$

D  $AB \times CD = AC \times BD$

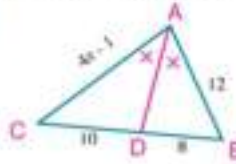


- 2 In each of the following figures: find the value of X (lengths are estimated in centimetres)

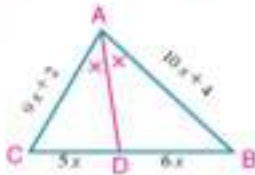
A



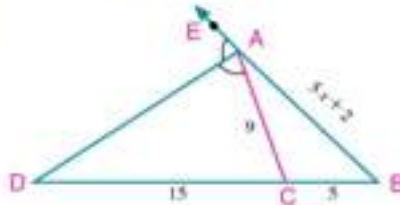
B



C



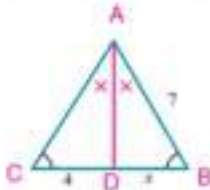
D



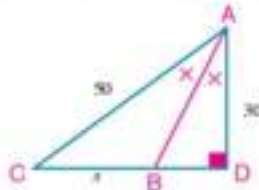
- 3 ABC is a triangle, its perimeter is 27cm.  $\overrightarrow{BD}$  bisects  $\angle B$  and intersects  $\overline{AC}$  at D. If  $AD = 4\text{cm}$  and  $CD = 5\text{cm}$ , find the length of  $\overline{AB}$ ,  $\overline{BC}$  and  $\overline{AD}$

- 4 In each of the following figures, find the value of x then find the perimeter of  $\triangle ABC$ .

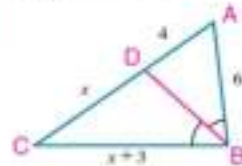
A



B



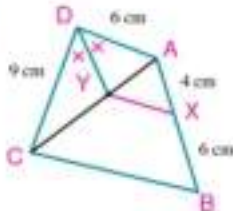
C



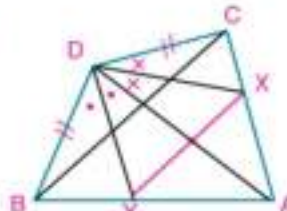
- 5 ABC is a triangle in which  $AB = 8\text{cm}$ ,  $AC = 4\text{cm}$  and  $BC = 6\text{cm}$  and  $\overrightarrow{AD}$  bisects  $\angle A$  and intersects  $\overline{BC}$  at D and  $\overrightarrow{AE}$  bisects the exterior angle at A and intersects  $\overline{BC}$  at E. Find the length of  $\overline{DE}$ ,  $\overline{AD}$  and  $\overline{AE}$ .

- 6 In each of the following figures, prove that  $\overline{XY} \parallel \overline{BC}$

A



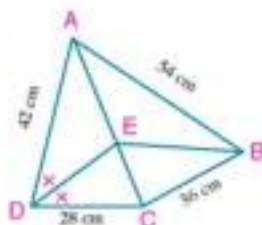
B



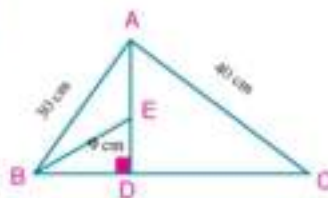


- 7 In each of the following figures, prove that  $\overrightarrow{BE}$  bisects  $\angle ABC$ .

A



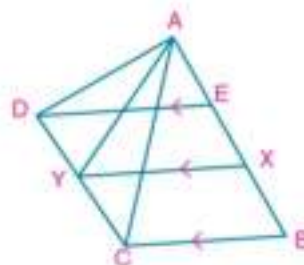
B



- 8 In the figure opposite:  $\overrightarrow{ED} \parallel \overrightarrow{XY} \parallel \overrightarrow{BC}$  and

$$AD \times BX = AC \times EX.$$

Prove that  $\overrightarrow{AY}$  bisects  $\angle CAD$ .



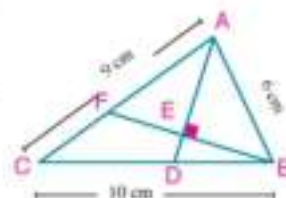
- 9 ABC is a triangle,  $D \in \overrightarrow{BC}$ ,  $D \notin \overrightarrow{BC}$  where  $CD = AB$ .  
 $\overrightarrow{CE} \parallel \overrightarrow{DA}$  and intersects  $\overrightarrow{AB}$  at E.  $\overrightarrow{EF} \parallel \overrightarrow{BC}$  and intersects  $\overrightarrow{AC}$  at F. Prove that  $\overrightarrow{BF}$  bisects  $\angle ABC$ .

- 10 In the figure opposite: ABC is a triangle in which  $AB = 6\text{cm}$ ,  $AC = 9\text{cm}$  and  $BC = 10\text{cm}$ .  $D \in \overrightarrow{BC}$  where  $BD = 4\text{cm}$ .

$\overrightarrow{BE} \perp \overrightarrow{AD}$  and intersects  $\overrightarrow{AD}$  and  $\overrightarrow{AB}$  at E and F respectively.

A Prove that  $\overrightarrow{AD}$  bisects  $\angle A$ .

B Find area of  $(\triangle ABF) : \text{area of } (\triangle CBF)$

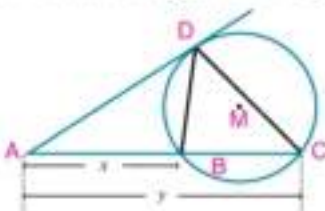


## Applications of Proportionality in the Circle

3 - 3



How can we construct a line segment such that its length  $l$  is a middle proportional of the lengths  $x$  and  $y$  for the given line segments?



$\therefore \triangle ADB \sim \triangle ACD$  (Why?)

$$\therefore \frac{AB}{AD} = \frac{AD}{AC}$$

then  $\frac{x}{l} = \frac{l}{y}$ ,  $l^2 = x \times y$  i.e.  $l$  is a middle proportional to  $x$  and  $y$



Construct a line segments of lengths  $\sqrt{3}$ ,  $\sqrt{15}$  and  $\sqrt{24}$

Compare your drawing with your classmate and check your answer using the calculator and measurement.

**First : Power of a point with respect to a circle**

**Definition**

**Power of the point A w.r. to the circle M whose radius  $r$  is the real number  $P_M(A)$  where:**

$$P_M(A) = (AM)^2 - r^2$$

### Important Notes

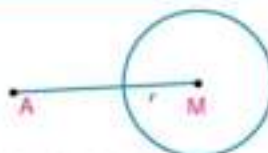
#### Note 1

You can expect the position of point A w.r. to the circle M

If:  $P_M(A) > 0$  then A lies outside the circle.

$P_M(A) = 0$  then A lies on the circle.

$P_M(A) < 0$  then A lies inside the circle.



### You will learn

- Find the power of a point w.r. to the circle.
- Determine the position of a point w.r. to the circle
- Find the measures of the resulting angles from the intersection of chords and tangents in the circle.
- Modeling and solving problems to find the length of the internal and external bisector of the angle.

### Key - Terms

- Power of a point
- Circle
- Chord
- Tangent
- Secant
- Diameter
- Concentric Circles
- Common External Tangent
- Common Internal Tangent

### Materials

- Geometric instruments for drawing and measurement.

### Example

- 1 Determine the position of each of the following points A, B and C w.r. to the circle M in which its radius equals 5cm, if :  
 $P_M(A) = 11$  ,  $P_M(B) = 0$  ,  $P_M(C) = -16$ , then calculate the distance between each point to the centre of the circle.

### Solution

$\because P_M(A) = 11 > 0$	$\therefore A$ lies outside the circle	
$\because P_M(A) = (AM)^2 - r^2$	$\therefore 11 = (AM)^2 - 25$	$\therefore AM = 6\text{cm}$
$\because P_M(B) = 0$	$\therefore B$ lies on the circle	$\therefore BM = 5\text{cm}$
$\because P_M(C) = -16$	$\therefore C$ lies inside the circle	
$\because P_M(C) = (CM)^2 - r^2$	$\therefore -16 = (CM)^2 - 25$	$\therefore CM = 3\text{cm}$

### Try to solve

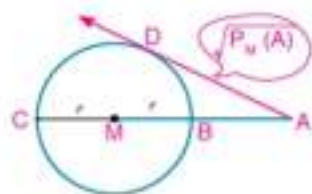
- 1 Determine the position of each of the following points A, B and C w.r. to the circle N in which its radius equals 3 cm in each of the following cases.  
**A**  $P_N(A) = 15$       **B**  $P_N(B) = 0$       **C**  $P_N(C) = -4$

### Note 2

If the point A lies outside the circle M

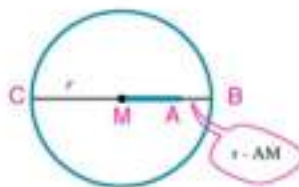
$$\begin{aligned} \text{then : } P_M(A) &= (AM)^2 - r^2 \\ &= (AM - r)(AM + r) \\ &= AB \times AC = (AD)^2 \end{aligned}$$

$$\therefore \text{Length of the tangent drawn from A to circle M} = \sqrt{P_M(A)}$$



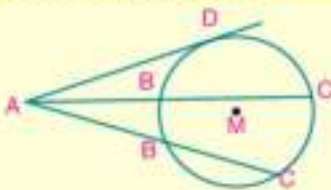
### Note 3

If the point A lies inside the circle M, then:  $P_M(A) = (AM)^2 - r^2$   
 $= (AM - r)(AM + r)$   
 $= -(r - AM)(AM + r)$   
 $= -AB \times AC$



### In general

A lies outside circle M



$$P_M(A) = AB \times AC = AB' \times AC' = (AD)^2$$

A lies inside circle M



$$P_M(A) = -AB \times AC = -AB' \times AC'$$



**Example**

- 2 The radius of circle M equals 31cm. The point A lies at 23cm distance from its radius centre. Draw the chord  $\overline{BC}$  where  $A \in \overline{BC}$ ,  $AB = 3 AC$ . Calculate:
- A length of the chord  $\overline{BC}$  and the centre of the circle.
- B The distance between the chord  $\overline{BC}$

**Solution**

In the circle M:

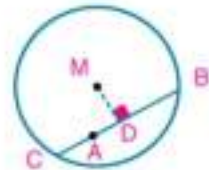
- A  $\because r = 31\text{cm}$ ,  $AM = 23\text{cm}$ ,  $A \in \overline{BC}$   
 $\therefore A$  lies inside the circle, then

$$P_M(A) = (AM)^2 - r^2 = -AB \times AC$$

$$(23)^2 - (31)^2 = -3AC \times AC \quad \therefore AC = 12\text{cm}$$

$$\therefore \text{Length of the chord } \overline{BC} = 4 AC = 4 \times 12 = 48\text{cm}$$

- B let the distance between the chord and the centre of the circle be  $MD$  where  $\overline{MD} \perp \overline{BC}$   
 $\therefore \overline{MD} \perp \overline{BC} \quad \therefore D$  is midpoint of  $\overline{BC}$ , then  $BD = 24\text{cm}$   
 $\therefore (MD)^2 = (31)^2 - (24)^2 = 385 \quad \therefore MD = \sqrt{385} \approx 19.6\text{cm}$

**Try to solve**

- 2 The radius of circle N equals 8cm. The point B lies at 12cm distance from its centre, draw a straight line passes through the point B and intersects the circle at C and D, where  $CB = CD$ . Calculate the length of the chord  $\overline{CD}$  and its distance from the point N.

**Example**

- 3 Two circles M and N are intersecting at A and B.  $C \in \overline{BA}$ ,  $C \notin \overline{BA}$ , draw  $\overline{CD}$  to intersect the circle M at D and E where  $CD = 9\text{cm}$ ,  $DE = 7\text{cm}$ , draw  $\overline{CF}$  to touch the circle N at F.
- A Prove that  $P_M(C) = P_N(C)$ .
- B If  $AB = 10\text{cm}$ . Find the length of each of  $\overline{AC}$  and  $\overline{CF}$ .

**Solution**

- A  $\because C$  lies outside the circle M,  $\overline{CE}$  and  $\overline{CB}$  are two secants to the circle M.

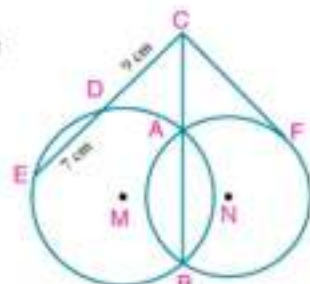
$$\therefore P_M(C) = CD \times CE = CA \times CB \quad (1)$$

$\because C$  lies outside the circle N,  $\overline{CB}$  is a secant,  $\overline{CF}$  is a tangent to it.

$$\therefore P_N(C) = CA \times CB = (CF)^2 \quad (2)$$

$$\text{from (1) and (2) } \therefore P_M(C) = P_N(C) = 9 \times 16 = 144$$

- B  $\because AB = 10\text{cm} \quad \therefore P_N(C) = CA(CA + 10) = (CF)^2 = 144$   
 $\therefore (CA)^2 + 10 CA = 144 \quad \therefore CA = 8\text{cm}$   
 $\therefore (CF)^2 = 144 \quad \therefore CF = 12\text{cm}$



### Important note

The set of points which have the same power with respect to two distinct circles is called the principle axis of the two circles.

If  $P_M(A) = P_N(A)$  then A lies on the principle axis of the two circles M and N.

In the previous example, notice that :  $P_M(C) = P_N(C)$  ,  $P_M(A) = P_N(A) = \text{zero}$  ,  $P_M(B) = P_N(B) = \text{zero}$    
 $\therefore \overleftrightarrow{AB}$  is the principle axis to the two circles M, N.

### Try to solve

- 3 The two circles M and N are touching each other externally at A,  $\overleftrightarrow{AB}$  is a common tangent to the two circles M, N.  $\overleftrightarrow{BC}$  intersects the circle M at C and D,  $\overleftrightarrow{BE}$  intersects the circle N at E and F respectively .
- A Prove that:  $\overleftrightarrow{AB}$  is the principle axis to the two circles M and N .
- B If  $P_M(B) = 36$  ,  $BC = 4\text{cm}$  ,  $EF = 9\text{cm}$ . Find the length of  $\overline{CD}$  ,  $\overline{AB}$  and  $\overline{BE}$ .

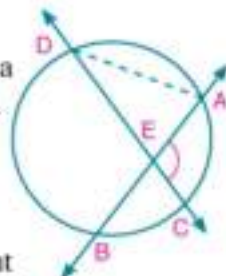
### Second: secant, tangent , and measures of angles

You have studied before:

- 1- The measure of an angle formed by two chords that intersect inside a circle is equal to half the sum of the measures of the intercepted arcs.

In the figure opposite:  $\overleftrightarrow{AB} \cap \overleftrightarrow{CD} = \{E\}$

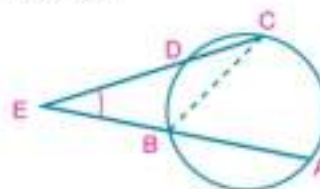
$$\text{then: } m(\angle AEC) = \frac{1}{2} [m(\widehat{AC}) + m(\widehat{DB})]$$



- 2- The measure of an angle formed by two secants drawn from a point outside a circle is equal to half the positive difference of the measures of the intercepted arcs.

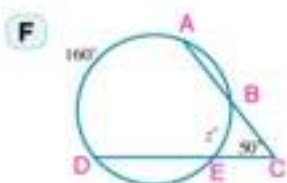
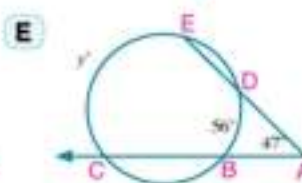
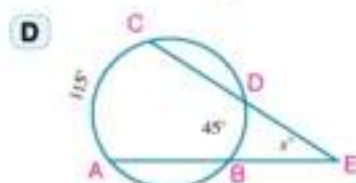
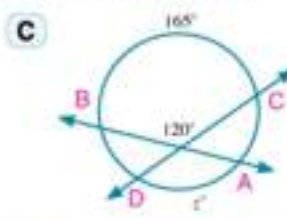
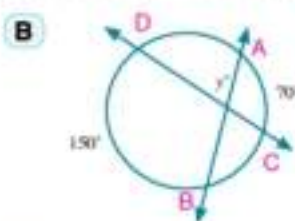
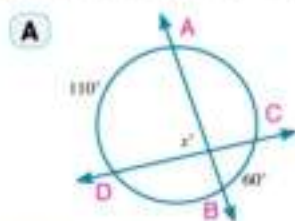
In the figure opposite:  $\overleftrightarrow{AB} \cap \overleftrightarrow{CD} = \{E\}$

$$\text{then: } m(\angle AEC) = \frac{1}{2} [m(\widehat{AC}) - m(\widehat{DB})]$$



### Try to solve

- 4 In each of the following figures: Find the value of the symbol used in measure.



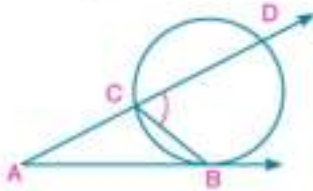
Investigating measure of the angle resulting from the intersection of a secant and a tangent (or two tangents) to a circle .

Well known problem

The measure of an angle formed by a secant and a tangent or two tangents drawn from a point outside a circle is equal to half the positive difference of the measures of the intercepted arcs.

### Proof

**First case:** Intersection of a secant and a tangent to a circle.



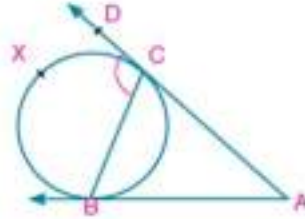
$\therefore \angle DCB$  is an exterior angle of  $\triangle ABC$

$$\therefore m(\angle A) = m(\angle BCD) - m(\angle CBA)$$

$$= \frac{1}{2} m(\widehat{BD}) - \frac{1}{2} m(\widehat{BC})$$

$$= \frac{1}{2} [m(\widehat{BD}) - m(\widehat{BC})]$$

**Second case:** Intersection of two tangents to a circle.



$\therefore \angle DCB$  is an exterior angle of  $\triangle ABC$

$$\therefore m(\angle A) = m(\angle BCD) - m(\angle CBA)$$

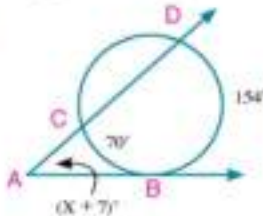
$$= \frac{1}{2} m(\widehat{BXC}) - \frac{1}{2} m(\widehat{BC})$$

$$= \frac{1}{2} [m(\widehat{BXC}) - m(\widehat{BC})]$$

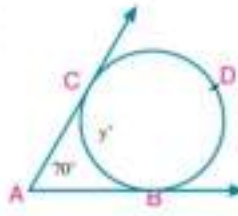
### Try to solve

5 Use the given data in each figure to find the value of the symbol used in measure.

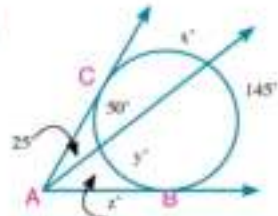
A



B



C



### Example

4 **Satellites:** A satellite revolves in an orbit and keeps in during rotation on a fixed height above the equator. The camera can monitor the arc length of 6011 km on the surface of the earth. If the measure of the arc equals  $54^\circ$ , find :

- Measuring the angle of the camera placed on the satellite.
- The radius length of the Earth of the equator.



### Solution

Modeling problem: Consider the circle M is the circle of the equator and  $m(\widehat{BC}) = 54^\circ$ , length of  $\widehat{BC} = 6011\text{km}$ .

**A**  $\therefore$  measure of the circle  $= 360^\circ$

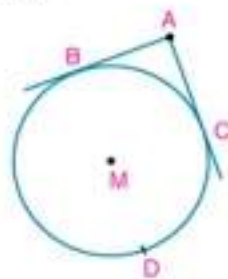
$$\therefore m(\widehat{BDC}) = 360^\circ - 54^\circ = 306^\circ$$

$$\begin{aligned} \text{then } m(\angle A) &= \frac{1}{2} [m(\widehat{BDC}) - m(\widehat{BC})] \\ &= \frac{1}{2} (306^\circ - 54^\circ) = 126^\circ \end{aligned}$$

**B** In the circle, the arc length is proportional to its measure

$$\frac{6011}{2 \times \pi \times r} = \frac{54^\circ}{360^\circ} \quad \therefore r = 6377.87\text{km}$$

$\therefore$  radius length of the earth at the equator  $\approx 6378\text{km}$ .

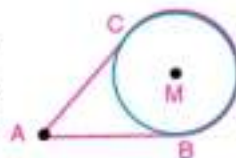


#### Remember

$$\frac{\text{length of arc}}{\text{Perimeter of the circle}} = \frac{\text{measure of arc}}{\text{Measure of the circle}}$$

### Try to solve

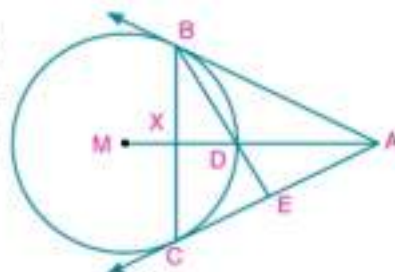
**6** A pulley rotates at the axis M by a strap passes over a small pulley at A. If the measure of the angle between the two parts of the strap is  $40^\circ$ . Find the length of the major arc  $\widehat{BC}$ , given that the radius length of the larger pulley equals 9cm.



**7** In the figure opposite: the radius length of circle M equals 9 cm,  $\overrightarrow{AB}$  and  $\overrightarrow{AC}$  are two tangents to the circle at B and C.  $\overrightarrow{AM}$  intersects the circle at D and  $\overline{BC}$  at X.  $\overrightarrow{BD}$  is drawn to intersect  $\overline{AC}$  at E. If  $P_M(A) = 144$ . Find:

**A** length of  $\overline{AB}$

**B** length of  $\overline{AX}$ .

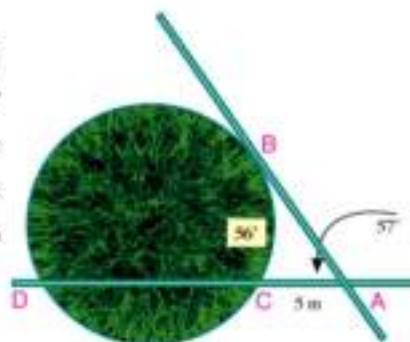


### Check your understanding

**Problem solving:** the figure opposite illustrates a plan of a circular garden. Two corridors are established for pedestrain Crossing tunnels, one of them is outside the garden and touches it at the point B, while the other one intersects the garden at two points C and D. The two corridors are intersecting at A.

If  $P_M(A) = 100$ ,  $AC = 5$  metres.

find the length of  $\overline{AB}$  and  $\overline{CD}$ , then find  $m(\widehat{BD})$ .

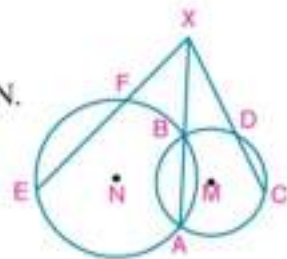




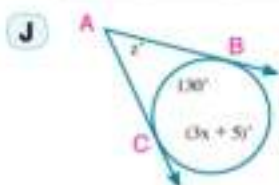
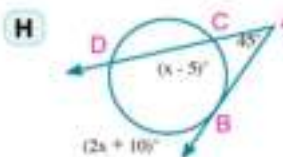
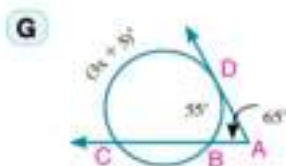
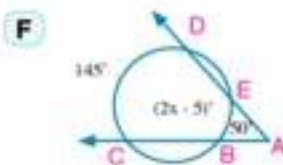
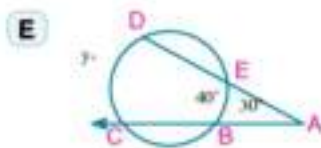
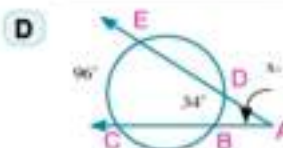
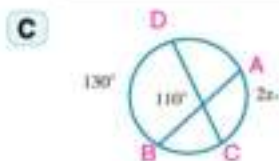
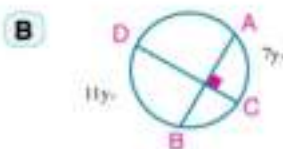
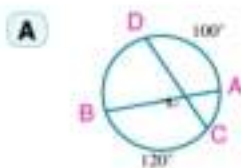
## Exercises (3 - 3)



- 1 Determine the position of each of the following points with respect to the circle M, of radius length 10cm, then calculate the distance between each point from the centre of the circle.
  - A  $P_M(A) = -36$
  - B  $P_M(B) = 96$
  - C  $P_M(C) = \text{zero}$
- 2 Find the power of the given point with respect to the circle M which its radius length is r:
  - A The point A where  $AM = 12\text{cm}$  and  $r = 9\text{cm}$
  - B The point B where  $BM = 8\text{ cm}$  and  $r = 15\text{ cm}$
  - C The point C where  $CM = 7\text{ cm}$  and  $r = 7\text{ cm}$
  - D The point D where  $DM = \sqrt{17}\text{ cm}$  and  $r = 4\text{ cm}$
- 3 If the distance between a point and the centre of a circle equals 25cm and the power of this point with respect to the circle equals 400. Find the radius length of this circle.
- 4 The radius length of circle M equals 20cm, A is a point distant 16cm from the centre of the circle, the chord  $\overline{BC}$  is drawn where  $A \in \overline{BC}$  and  $AB = 2AC$ . Calculate the length of the chord  $\overline{BC}$ .
- 5 In the figure opposite: the two circles M and N are intersected at A and B where  $\overrightarrow{AB} \cap \overrightarrow{CD} \cap \overrightarrow{EF} = \{X\}$ ,  $XD = 2DC$ ,  $EF = 10\text{cm}$  and  $P_N(X) = 144$ .
  - A Prove that  $\overrightarrow{AB}$  is a principle axis to the two circles M and N.
  - B Find the length of  $\overline{XC}$  and  $\overline{XF}$
  - C Prove that CDFE is a cyclic quadrilateral.



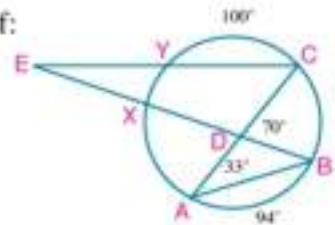
6 Use the given data of each figure to find the value of the symbol used in measurement.



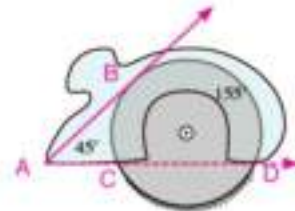


- 7 In the figure opposite:  $m(\angle BAC) = 33^\circ$ ,  $m(\angle BDC) = 70^\circ$ ,  
 $m(\widehat{AB}) = 94^\circ$ ,  $X(\widehat{CY}) = 100^\circ$  Find the measure of each of:

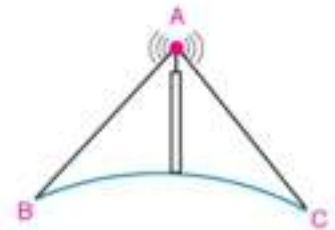
- A  $\widehat{XY}$   
 B  $\widehat{AX}$   
 C  $\angle BEC$



- 8 **Industry:** A circular saw for cutting wood, the radius length of its circle equals 10cm. It rotates inside a protective container. If  $m(\angle BAD) = 45^\circ$  and  $m(\widehat{BD}) = 155^\circ$  Find the arc length of the disc's saw outside the protective container.



- 9 **Communication:** The signals produced from the communication tower follow a ray in their pathway, its starting point is on the top of the tower and it is a tangent to the surface of the earth, as in the figure opposite. Determine the measure of the arc included by the two tangents supposing that the tower lies at sea level, and  $m(\angle CAB) = 80^\circ$



### @ Enrichment Information

Please visit the following links.



### General Exercises

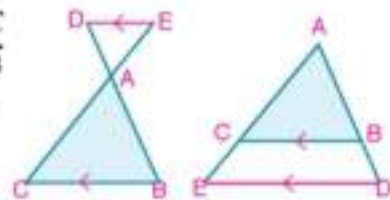
For more exercises, please visit the website of Ministry of Education.

# Unit summary

**Theorem 1:** If a line is drawn parallel to one side of a triangle and intersects the other two sides, then it divides them into segments whose lengths are proportional.

**Corollary:** If a straight line is drawn outside the triangle ABC parallel to one side of the triangle, say  $\overline{BC}$  intersecting  $\overrightarrow{AB}$  and  $\overrightarrow{AC}$  in D and E respectively as shown in the figures

$$\text{then: } \frac{AB}{BD} = \frac{AC}{EC} \quad \begin{cases} \frac{AD}{AB} = \frac{AE}{AC} \\ \frac{AD}{BD} = \frac{AE}{CE} \end{cases}$$



**Converse of theorem 1:** If a line intersects two sides of a triangle and divides them into segments whose lengths are proportional, then it is parallel to the third side of the triangle.

**Thales theorem:** Given several coplanar parallel lines and two transversals, then the lengths of the corresponding segments on the transversals are proportional.

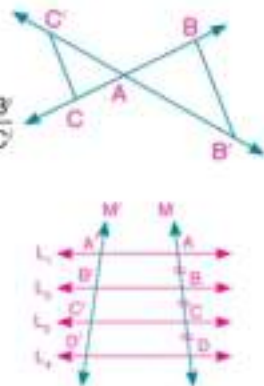
**Special cases**

1- If the two lines M and M' intersect at A and  $\overrightarrow{BB'} \parallel \overrightarrow{CC'}$ , then:  $\frac{AB}{AC} = \frac{AB'}{AC'}$   
and conversely, if:  $\frac{AB}{AC} = \frac{AB'}{AC'}$  then:  $\overrightarrow{BB'} \parallel \overrightarrow{CC'}$

2- If  $L_1 \parallel L_2 \parallel L_3 \parallel L_4$ ,

Where M and M' are two transversals to them, and :  $AB = BC = CD$

then:  $A'B' = B'C' = C'D'$



**Theorem 3:** the bisector of the interior or exterior angle of a triangle at any vertex divides the opposite base of the triangle internally or externally into two parts, the ratio of their lengths is equal to ratio of the lengths of the other two sides of the triangle.

**Important Note:** In the figure opposite

1- D divides  $\overline{BC}$  internally, and E divides  $\overline{BC}$  externally in the same ratio

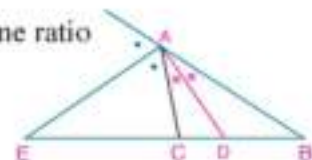
$$\text{then } \frac{BD}{DC} = \frac{BE}{EC}$$

2- The two bisectors :  $\overrightarrow{AD}$  and  $\overrightarrow{AE}$  are perpendicular i.e.  $\overrightarrow{AD} \perp \overrightarrow{AE}$

3- If  $AB > AC$ , the bisector of  $\angle A$  intersects the side  $\overline{BC}$  at D, where  $BD > DC$ , the bisector of the exterior angle of the triangle at A intersects  $\overline{BC}$  at E, where  $BE > EC$ .

$$4- AD = \sqrt{BA \times AC - DB \times DC}$$

$$5- AE = \sqrt{BE \times EC - BA \times AC}$$



# Unit summary

## Special cases of the converse of theorem (3)

**1-** In  $\triangle ABC$ :

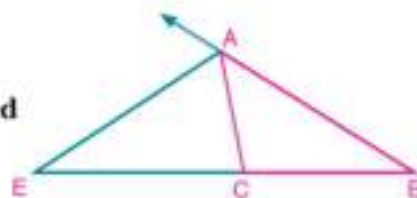
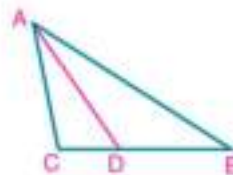
If  $D \in \overline{BC}$  where  $\frac{BD}{DC} = \frac{BA}{AC}$

then:  $\overrightarrow{AD}$  bisects  $\angle BAC$

If  $E \in \overrightarrow{BC}$ ,  $E \notin \overline{BC}$ , where  $\frac{BE}{EC} = \frac{BA}{AC}$

then:  $\overrightarrow{AE}$  bisects the exterior angle of  $\triangle ABC$  at A.

**2 - Fact:** Bisectors of angles of the triangle are intersected at one point.



## First: Power of a point with respect to a circle

power of the point A with respect to the circle M whose radius equals r is the real number  $P_M(A)$  where:

$$P_M(A) = (AM)^2 - r^2$$

If  $P_M(A) > 0$  then A lies outside the circle M

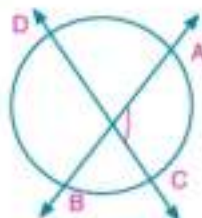
$P_M(A) = 0$  then A lies on the circle M

$P_M(A) < 0$  then A lies inside the circle M

## Second: Secant , tangent and Measures of angle.

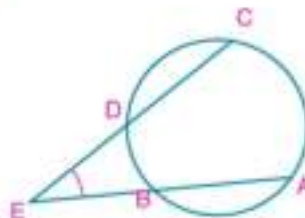
**1-** Measure of the angle resulted from the intersection of the secants in the circle:

**A** Inside the circle



$$m(\angle AEC) = \frac{1}{2}[m(\widehat{AC}) + m(\widehat{DB})]$$

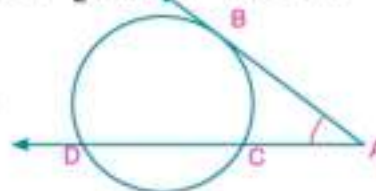
**B** Outside the circle:



$$m(\angle AEC) = \frac{1}{2}[m(\widehat{AC}) - m(\widehat{DB})]$$

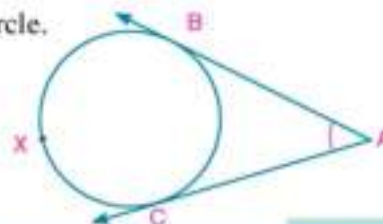
**2-** The measure of an angle formed by a secant and a tangent to the circle

$$m(\angle A) = \frac{1}{2}[m(\widehat{BD}) - m(\widehat{BC})]$$



**3-** The measure of an angle formed by two tangents to the circle.

$$m(\angle A) = \frac{1}{2}[m(\widehat{BXC}) - m(\widehat{BC})]$$





# Unit

# 4

# Trigonometry

## Unit objectives

By the end of the unit, the student should be able to:

- ➊ Recognize the directed angle.
- ➋ Recognize the standard position of the directed angle.
- ➌ Recognize the positive and negative measure of the directed angle.
- ➍ Recognize the type of measuring angle (degree and radian measures)
- ➎ Recognize the radian measure of the central angles in circle.
- ➏ Use the calculator to carry out the special mathematical operation, converting from the radian to the degree measure and vice versa.
- ➐ Recognize the trigonometric functions.
- ➑ Determine the signs of the trigonometric functions in the four quadrants.
- ➒ Deduce the set of equivalent angles which have the same trigonometric functions.
- ➓ Recognize the trigonometric ratios of an acute and any angle.
- ➔ Deduce the trigonometric ratios to some special angles.
- ➕ Recognize the related angles ( $180^\circ \pm \theta$ ), ( $360^\circ \pm \theta$ ), ( $90^\circ \pm \theta$ ), and ( $270^\circ \pm \theta$ )
- ➖ Give the general solution to the trigonometric equations in the form :  $\sin AX = \cos BX$   
 $\tan AX = \cot BX$        $\sec AX = \csc BX$
- ➗ Find the measure of an angle given one of its trigonometric ratios.
- ➘ Recognize the graphic representation to the sine and cosine functions, and deduce the properties of each of them.
- ➙ Use the scientific calculator to calculate the trigonometric ratios of some special angles.
- ➚ Model some of the physical and life phenomena which are represented by the trigonometric functions.
- ➛ Use information technology to recognize the multiple applications of the basic concepts of trigonometry.

## Key - Terms

➊ Degree Measure  
➋ Radian Measure  
➌ Directed Angle  
➍ Radian

➎ Standard Position  
➏ Positive Measure  
➐ Negative Measure  
➑ Equivalent Angle  
➒ Quadrant Angle

➓ Trigonometric Function  
➔ Sine  
➕ Cosine  
➖ Tangent

➗ Cosecant  
➘ Secant  
➙ Cotangent  
➚ Circular Function

## Lessons of the unit

- Lesson (4 - 1): Directed Angle.
- Lesson (4 - 2): Systems of Measuring Angle.
- Lesson (4 - 3): Trigonometric Functions.
- Lesson (4 - 4): Relations between Trigonometric Functions.
- Lesson (4 - 5): Graphing Trigonometric Functions.
- Lesson (4 - 6): Finding the Measure of an Angle Given the value of one of its ratios.

## Materials

Scientific calculator - Graph calculator - Squared paper - Computer - Graphic programs

## Brief History

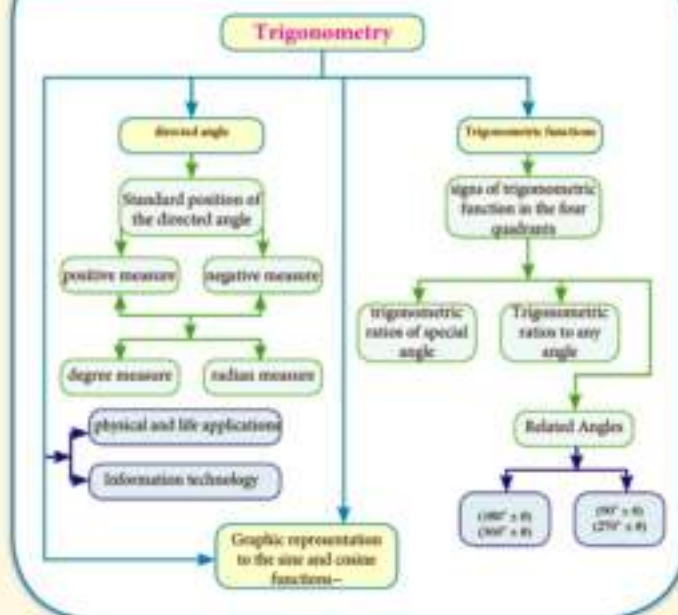
Trigonometry is one of the branches of mathematics. It specializes in calculations among the measures of angles of the triangle and the length of its sides. This science emerged within the ancient mathematics, especially with regard to the calculation of astronomy in which our ancestors were interested in as they watched and contemplated the universe and the movement of the sun, the moon, the stars, and the planets.

The Arab mathematician Nosir-eldin Altousi is the first to separate the trigonometry from the astronomy.

Trigonometry is one of the sciences the arabs were interested in the arab scientist Abual - Wafa Buzjaty (940-998 AD) in the tenth century describes the terminology "the tangent" and this term is taken from the shadows objects which formed as a result of validity of the emitted light from the sun in a straight lines.

Arabs have many additions in the plane and the circular (w.r. to the sphere) trigonometry, we stemen we taking from them important information, and they added to it two much until trigonometry became including many mathematical researches, and its applications have become in various scientific knowledge and practical , and also contributed to the advancing the progress and prosperity

## Chart of the unit





# 4 - 1

## Directed Angle

### You will Learn

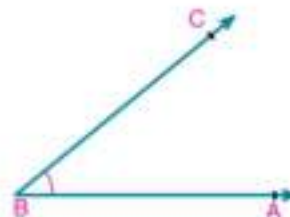
- » Concept of directed angle,
- » Standard position of directed angle,
- » Positive and negative measure of the directed angle,
- » Position of the directed angle in the coordinate plane,
- » Concept of the equivalent angles,



The angle has been defined before as the union of two rays with a common vertex.

In the figure opposite, the common point B is called «**Vertex**» of the angle and the two rays  $\overrightarrow{BA}$  and  $\overrightarrow{BC}$  are called "**sides**" of the angle.

i.e.:  $\overrightarrow{BA} \cup \overrightarrow{BC} = (\angle ABC)$   
and is written as  $\widehat{ABC}$ .



### Key - Terms

- » Degree Measure
- » Directed angle
- » Standard Position
- » Positive measure
- » Negative measure
- » Equivalent Angle
- » Quadrantal Angle

### Degree Measure System

You have known that the degree measure depends on dividing the circle into 360 equal arcs in length, then:

- 1- The central angle subtends one of these arcs, its measure equals one degree ( $1^\circ$ )
- 2- Each degree is subdivided into 60 equal divisions, each division is called a minute and is denoted by ( $1'$ )
- 3- Each minute is subdivided into 60 equal divisions, each division is called "a second" and is denoted by ( $1''$ )

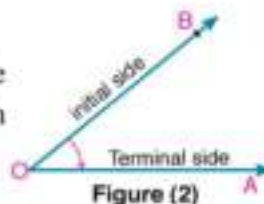
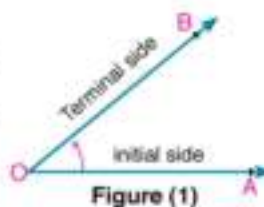
i.e.:  $1^\circ = 60'$  and  $1' = 60''$



### Directed Angle

We shall now put a further emphasis on the order of the two rays forming the angle, then it is written in the form of an ordered pair  $(\overrightarrow{OA}, \overrightarrow{OB})$  where  $\overrightarrow{OA}$  is the initial side and  $\overrightarrow{OB}$  is the terminal side of the angle of vertex O as in figure (1).

If the initial side is  $\overrightarrow{OB}$  and the terminal side is  $\overrightarrow{OA}$ , then it is written as  $(\overrightarrow{OB}, \overrightarrow{OA})$  in figure (2).



### Materials

- » Scientific calculator,





the directed angle is an ordered pair of two rays called the sides of the angle with a common starting point called the vertex.

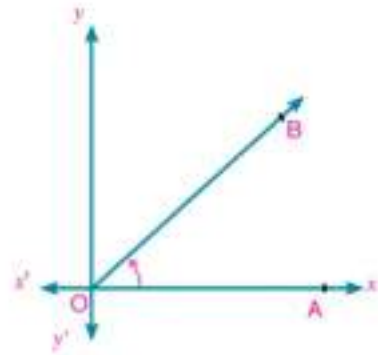
### critical thinking:

➤ Is  $(\overrightarrow{OA}, \overrightarrow{OB}) = (\overrightarrow{OB}, \overrightarrow{OA})$ ? Explain your answer.

### Standard position of the directed angle

An angle is in the standard position if its vertex is the origin of rectangular coordinate system, and its initial side lies on the positive direction of the x-axis.

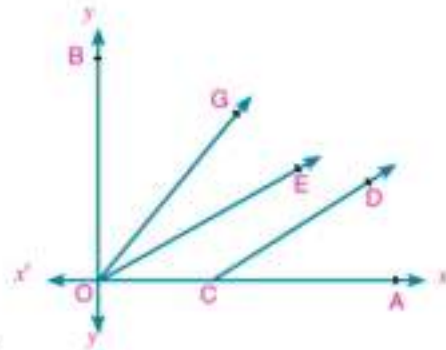
Is the directed angle  $\angle AOB$  in the standard position? Explain your answer.



### Oral exercises

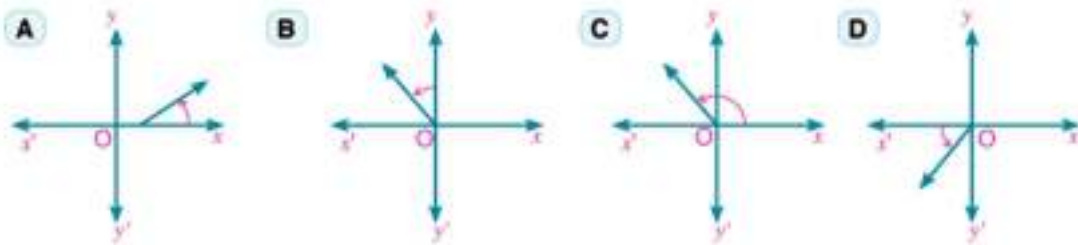
Which one of the following ordered pairs expresses a directed angle in its standard position? Explain your answer.

- |   |   |
|---|---|
| <b>A</b> $(\overrightarrow{CA}, \overrightarrow{CD})$ | <b>B</b> $(\overrightarrow{OA}, \overrightarrow{OE})$ |
| <b>C</b> $(\overrightarrow{OE}, \overrightarrow{OA})$ | <b>D</b> $(\overrightarrow{OA}, \overrightarrow{OG})$ |
| <b>E</b> $(\overrightarrow{OB}, \overrightarrow{OG})$ | <b>F</b> $(\overrightarrow{OA}, \overrightarrow{OB})$ |



### Try to solve

1 Which of the following directed angles is in the standard position? Explain your answer.



## Positive and negative measures of a directed angle

In figure (1) the directed angle, resulting from an anticlockwise rotation has a positive measure.

In figure (2) the directed angle, resulting from a clockwise rotation has a negative measure.

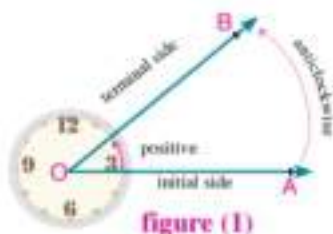


figure (1)

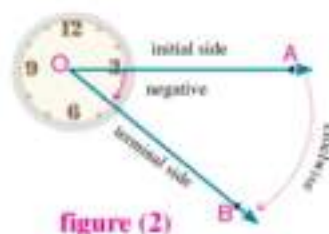
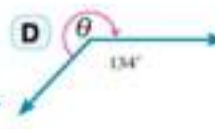
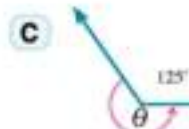
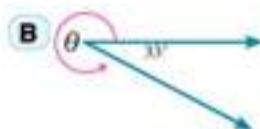
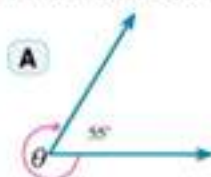


figure (2)

### Example

- 1 Find the measure of the directed angle  $\theta$  in each of the following figure:



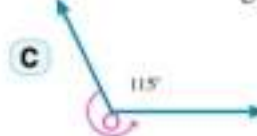
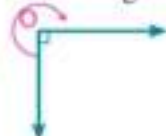
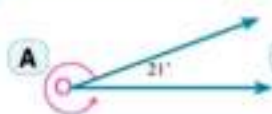
### Solution

We know that the sum of measures of accumulative angles around a point equals  $360^\circ$

- A Direction of the angle  $\theta$  is a clockwise direction  $m(\angle \theta) = -(360^\circ - 55^\circ) = -305^\circ$
- B Direction of the angle  $\theta$  is an anticlockwise direction  $m(\angle \theta) = 360^\circ - 33^\circ = 327^\circ$
- C Direction of the angle  $\theta$  is an anticlockwise direction  $m(\angle \theta) = 360^\circ - 125^\circ = 235^\circ$
- D Direction of the angle  $\theta$  is a clockwise direction  $m(\angle \theta) = -(360^\circ - 134^\circ) = -226^\circ$

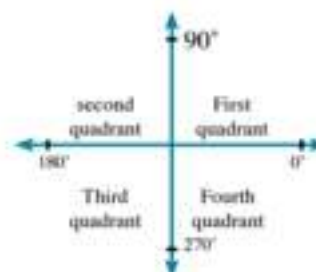
### Try to solve

- 2 Find the measure of the directed angle  $\theta$  in each of the following figures:

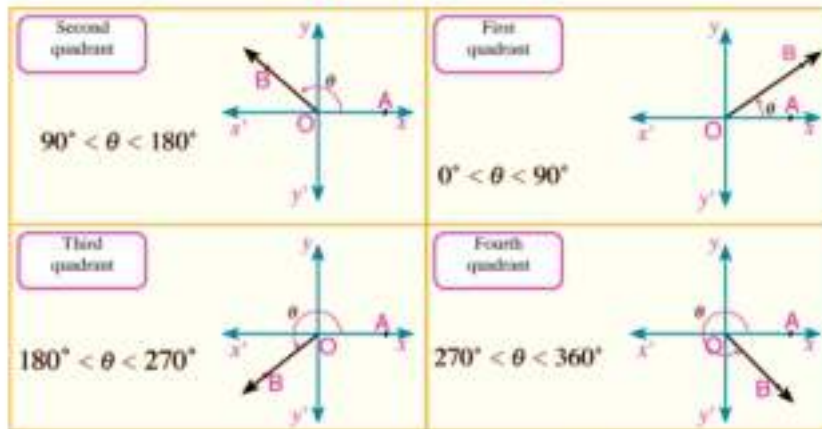


### Angle's position in the orthogonal coordinate plane:

- The orthogonal coordinate plane is divided into four quadrants as in the figure opposite.



- If the directed angle  $\angle AOB$  in the standard position and its positive measure is  $(\theta)$ , then its terminal side  $\overrightarrow{OB}$  lies in one of the quadrants:



- If the terminal side  $\overrightarrow{OB}$  lies on one of the two axes, then the angle called (Quadrantal angle), and the angles whose measures  $0^\circ, 90^\circ, 180^\circ, 270^\circ, 360^\circ$  are quadrantal angles.

### Example

- 2 Determine the quadrant in which each of the following angles lies:  
**A**  $48^\circ$       **B**  $217^\circ$       **C**  $135^\circ$       **D**  $295^\circ$       **E**  $270^\circ$

### Solution

**A**  $0^\circ < 48^\circ < 90^\circ$

then it lies in the first quadrant.

**B**  $180^\circ < 217^\circ < 270^\circ$

then it lies in the third quadrant.

**C**  $90^\circ < 135^\circ < 180^\circ$

then it lies in the second quadrant.

**D**  $270^\circ < 295^\circ < 360^\circ$

then it lies in the fourth quadrant.

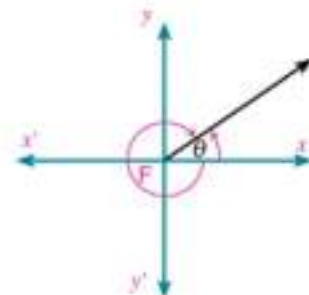
**E**  $270^\circ$  is a quadrantal angle.

### Try to solve

- 3 Determine the quadrant in which each of the following angles lie:  
**A**  $88^\circ$       **B**  $152^\circ$       **C**  $180^\circ$       **D**  $300^\circ$       **E**  $196^\circ$

### Note:

- If  $(\theta^\circ)$  is the positive measure of the directed angle, then its negative measure equals  $(\theta^\circ - 360^\circ)$
- If  $(-\theta^\circ)$  is the negative measure of the directed angle, then its positive measure equals  $(-\theta^\circ + 360^\circ)$





### Example

- 3 Determine the negative measure of the angle whose measure  $275^\circ$ .

#### Solution

The negative measure of the angle ( $275^\circ$ ) =  $275^\circ - 360^\circ = -85^\circ$

**Check:**  $|275^\circ| + |-85^\circ| = 275^\circ + 85^\circ = 360^\circ$

The sum of the absolute value of each of the positive and negative measure of the directed angle equals  $360^\circ$

#### Try to solve

- 4 Determine the negative measure of the angles whose measures as follows:
- A  $32^\circ$       B  $270^\circ$       C  $210^\circ$       D  $315^\circ$

### Example

- 4 Determine the positive measure of the angle of measure  $-235^\circ$

#### Solution

The positive measure of the angle ( $-235^\circ$ ) =  $360^\circ - 235^\circ = 125^\circ$

**Check:**  $|-235^\circ| + |125^\circ| = 235^\circ + 125^\circ = 360^\circ$

#### Try to solve

- 5 Determine the positive measure of each of the following angles :
- A  $-52^\circ$       B  $-126^\circ$       C  $-90^\circ$       D  $-320^\circ$
- 6 **Sports:** One of the disc players spins by an angle of measure  $150^\circ$  draw the angle in the standard position.

### Equivalent angles

Study the following figures and determine the directed angle ( $\theta$ ) in the standard position in each figure, what do you notice?

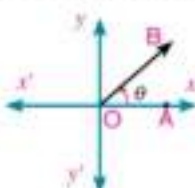


figure (1)

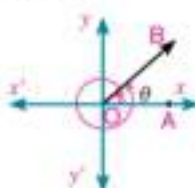


figure (2)

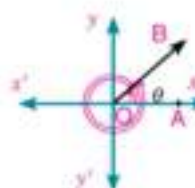


figure (3)

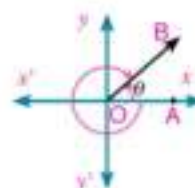


figure (4)

In the figures (1), (2), (3) and (4), we notice that the angle ( $\theta$ ) and the angle drawn with it have the same side  $\overrightarrow{OB}$ .

**figure (1):** the angle of measure  $\theta$  is in the standard position.

**figure (2):** the angles  $\theta$ ,  $\theta + 360^\circ$  are equivalent.

**figure (3):** the angles  $\theta$ ,  $\theta + 2 \times 360^\circ$  are equivalent.

**figure (4):** the angles  $\theta$ ,  $-(360^\circ - \theta) = \theta - 360^\circ$  are equivalent

From the previous, we deduce that:

When drawing a directed angle  $\theta$  in the standard position, then all angles whose measures :

$$\theta \pm 1 \times 360^\circ \text{ or } \theta \pm 2 \times 360^\circ \text{ or } \theta \pm 3 \times 360^\circ \text{ or } \dots \text{ or } \theta + n \times 360^\circ \text{ where } n \in \mathbb{Z}$$

have the same terminal side are called **equivalent angles**.

### Example

- 5 Find a positive and a negative measure of an angle co-terminal with each of the following angles:

A  $120^\circ$

B  $-230^\circ$

### Solution

A An angle of positive measure:  $120^\circ + 360^\circ = 480^\circ$  (add  $360^\circ$ )  
 An angle of negative measure:  $120^\circ - 360^\circ = -240^\circ$  (subtract  $360^\circ$ )

B An angle of positive measure:  $-230^\circ + 360^\circ = 130^\circ$  (add  $360^\circ$ )  
 An angle of negative measure:  $-230^\circ - 360^\circ = -590^\circ$  (subtract  $360^\circ$ )

**Think:** Are there other angles of positive measure and others of negative measure? Mention some of these angles if exist.

### Try to solve

- 7 Find a positive and a negative measures of an angle co-terminal with each of the following angles:

A  $40^\circ$

B  $150^\circ$

C  $-125^\circ$

D  $-240^\circ$

E  $-180^\circ$

- 8 **Discover the error:** all the measures of the following angles are equivalent to the angle of measure  $75^\circ$  in the standard position except:

A  $-285^\circ$

B  $-645^\circ$

C  $285^\circ$

D  $435^\circ$



### Check your understanding

- 1 Determine the quadrant in which each of the following angles lies:

A  $56^\circ$

B  $325^\circ$

C  $570^\circ$

D  $166^\circ$

E  $390^\circ$

- 2 Determine a negative measure of each of the following angles of measures:

A  $43^\circ$

B  $214^\circ$

C  $125^\circ$

D  $90^\circ$

E  $312^\circ$

- 3 Determine the smallest positive measure of each of the following angles:

A  $-56^\circ$

B  $-215^\circ$

C  $495^\circ$

D  $930^\circ$

E  $-450^\circ$



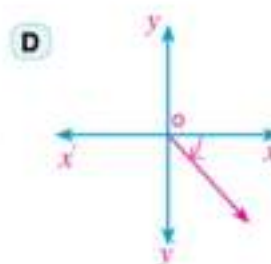
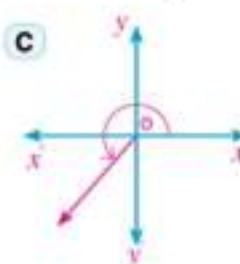
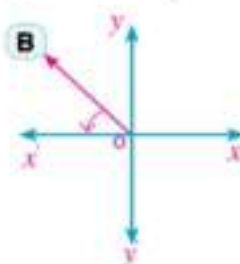
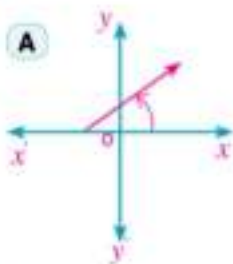
### Exercises (4 - 1)



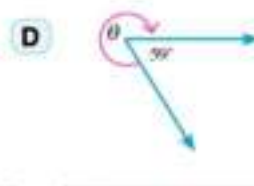
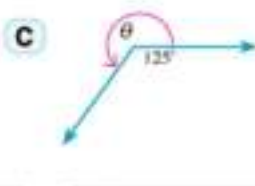
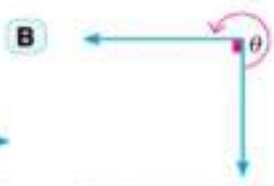
#### 1 Complete:

- A** A directed angle is in the standard position if \_\_\_\_\_
- B** It is said that the directed angles in the standard position are equivalent if \_\_\_\_\_
- C** A directed angle is positive, if the rotation of the angle \_\_\_\_\_ and is negative, if the rotation of the angle \_\_\_\_\_
- D** If the terminal side of the directed angle lies on one of the coordinate axes, then it is called \_\_\_\_\_
- E** If  $(\theta)$  is the measure of a directed angle in the standard position and  $n \in \mathbb{Z}$ , then  $(\theta + n \times 360^\circ)$  is called \_\_\_\_\_ angles.
- F** The smallest positive measure of the angle whose measure  $530^\circ$  is \_\_\_\_\_
- G** The angle whose measure  $930^\circ$  lies in the \_\_\_\_\_ quadrant.
- H** The smallest positive measure of the angle whose measure  $-690^\circ$  is \_\_\_\_\_

#### 2 Which of the following directed angles is in the standard position



#### 3 Find the measure of the directed angle $\theta$ in each of the following figures:



#### 4 Determine the quadrant in which each of the following angles lies on:

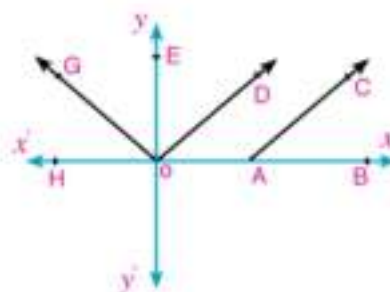
- A**  $24^\circ$
- B**  $215^\circ$
- C**  $-40^\circ$
- D**  $-220^\circ$
- E**  $640^\circ$



- 5 Show by drawing each of the following angles in the standard position:
- A  $32^\circ$       B  $140^\circ$       C  $-80^\circ$       D  $-110^\circ$       E  $-315^\circ$
- 6 Determine a negative measure for each of the following angles:
- A  $83^\circ$       B  $136^\circ$       C  $90^\circ$
- \_\_\_\_\_
- D  $264^\circ$       E  $964^\circ$       F  $1070^\circ$
- \_\_\_\_\_
- 7 Determine the smallest positive measure of each of the following angles:
- A  $-183^\circ$       B  $-217^\circ$       C  $-315^\circ$       D  $-570^\circ$

- 8 In the figure opposite: which of the directed angles in the following ordered pairs is in the standard position? why?

- A  $(\overrightarrow{OA}, \overrightarrow{OD})$       B  $(\overrightarrow{OG}, \overrightarrow{OC})$   
 C  $(\overrightarrow{AB}, \overrightarrow{AC})$       D  $(\overrightarrow{OE}, \overrightarrow{OD})$   
 E  $(\overrightarrow{OD}, \overrightarrow{OG})$       F  $(\overrightarrow{OB}, \overrightarrow{OG})$



- 9 A gymnast spins on the gaming device by an angle of measure  $200^\circ$ . Draw this angle in the standard position.
- 10 **Discover the error:** Write a smallest positive and another smallest negative angle share with the terminal side of the angle  $(-135^\circ)$ .

Karim's Answer

the smallest angle with positive measure =  
 $-135^\circ + 180^\circ = 45^\circ$   
 the smallest angle with negative measure =  
 $-135^\circ - 180^\circ = -315^\circ$

Ziad's answer

the smallest angle with positive measure =  
 $-135^\circ + 360^\circ = 225^\circ$   
 the smallest angle with negative measure =  
 $-135^\circ - 360^\circ = -495^\circ$

Which of the two answers is correct? Explain your answer.

# 4 - 2

## Systems of Measuring Angle

### You will Learn

- Concept of radian measure of an angle.
- Relation between radian and degree measure.
- How to find the length of an arc in a circle.



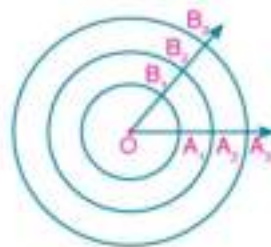
You have known that the degree measure is divided into degrees, minutes, and seconds, and one degree = 60 minutes, and one minute = 60 seconds.

Are there other measurements for the angle?

### Radian Measure

#### Group work

- 1- Draw a set of concentric circles.
- 2- Find the ratio of the length of the arc and the length of the radius of its corresponding circle - what do you notice?



### Key - Terms

- Degree Measure
- Radian Measure
- Radian Angle

**We notice that** the ratio of the length of the arc of any central angle, and the radius of its corresponding circle equals constant quantity.

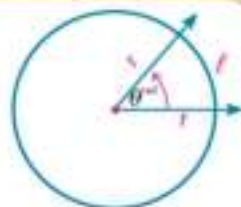
$$\text{i.e.: } \frac{\text{length of } \widehat{A_1 B_1}}{MA_1} = \frac{\text{length of } \widehat{A_2 B_2}}{MA_2} = \frac{\text{length of } \widehat{A_3 B_3}}{MA_3} = \text{constant quantity.}$$

and this constant is the radian measure of the angle. The radian measure of the central angle ( $\theta^{\text{rad}}$ ), =  $\frac{\text{length of the arc which the central angle subtends}}{\text{Radius of this circle}}$

#### Definition

If  $\theta^{\text{rad}}$  is the radian measure of the central angle in a circle of radius  $r$  subtends an arc of length  $\ell$ , then length of the arc equals the product of the radian measure of the central angle and the radius of its circle:

$$\ell = \theta^{\text{rad}} \times r$$



### Materials

- Scientific calculator.

From the definition we deduce that:

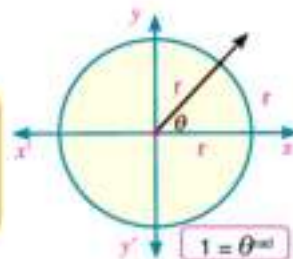
$$\ell = \theta^{\text{rad}} \times r \quad , \quad r = \frac{\ell}{\theta^{\text{rad}}}$$

And the unit of measuring angles in the radian measure is the radian angle which is denoted by ( $1^{\text{rad}}$ ) and is read as one radian.



### Radian angle

It is a central angle in a circle subtends an arc of length equals the radius of this circle.



**Critical thinking:** Is the measure of the central angle in a circle is proportional to the length of the opposite arc? Explain your answer.

### Example

- 11 A circle of radius 8cm. Find to the nearest hundredth the length of the arc opposite to a central angle of measure  $\frac{5}{12}\pi$ .

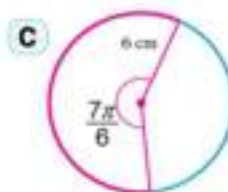
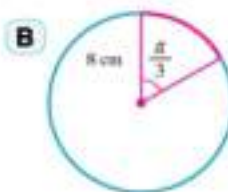
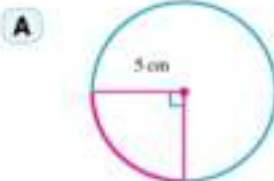
### Solution

Use the formula of the length of the arc:  $l = \theta^{\text{rad}} \times r$

$$r = 8 \text{ cm} , \theta^{\text{rad}} = \frac{5\pi}{12} , \quad l = \frac{5\pi}{12} \times 8 \quad \therefore l \approx 10.47 \text{ cm}$$

### Try to solve

- 1 Find the length of the red arc in each of the following circles approximating the result to the nearest tenth.



### Relation between degree measure and radian measure:

**You have known that:** measure of the central angle in a circle equals the measure of its arc.

i.e. The central angle of degree measure  $360^\circ$ , then the length of its arc equals  $2\pi r$

### In the unit circle

$2\pi$  in a radian measure is equivalent to  $360^\circ$  in a degree measure.

i.e.  $\pi^{\text{rad}}$  is equivalent to  $180^\circ$  ,  $1^{\text{rad}} = \frac{180^\circ}{\pi} \approx 57^\circ 17' 45''$

If there is an angle of radian measure  $\theta^{\text{rad}}$  and its degree measure  $x^\circ$  then:

$$\frac{x^\circ}{180^\circ} = \frac{\theta^{\text{rad}}}{\pi}$$

**Did you know?**  
If the radius of a circle equals the unity then the circle is called the unit circle.



### Example

- 12 Convert  $30^\circ$  to radian measure in terms of  $\pi$ .

To convert to radian measure we use the formula  $\frac{x^\circ}{180^\circ} = \frac{\theta^{\text{rad}}}{\pi}$

$$\theta^{\text{rad}} = \frac{30^\circ \times \pi}{180^\circ} = \frac{\pi}{6}$$

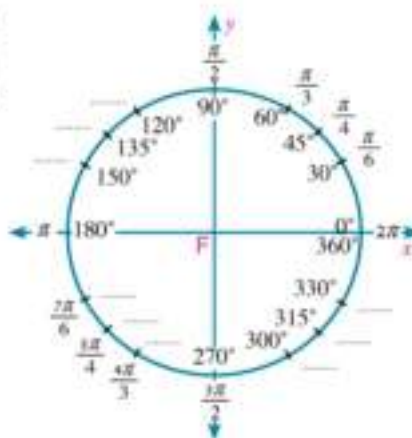
There is another unit for measuring angle which is (Grad) and it equals  $\frac{1}{200}$  of the measure of the straight angle.

If  $x$ ,  $\theta$ ,  $y$  are three measures of angles in degree, radian, and Grad respectively, then:

$$\frac{x^\circ}{180^\circ} = \frac{\theta^{\text{rad}}}{\pi} = \frac{y^{\text{grad}}}{200}$$

### Try to solve

- 2 The figure opposite represents the measures of some special angles one of them is written in radian outside the circle, and the other is written in degree inside the circle. Write the corresponding measure of each angle in the figure opposite.



### Example

- 13 Convert  $1.2^{\text{rad}}$  to the degree measure.

### Solution

$$x^\circ = \frac{1.2 \times 180^\circ}{\pi}$$

$$x^\circ = 68.75493542 = 68^\circ 45' 18''$$

Calculator is used as follows:

Start

1 . 2 × 1 8 0 ÷ π =

68° 45' 17.77"

### Try to solve

- 3 Convert the measures of the following angles to the degree measure approximating the result to the nearest second:

A  $0.7^{\text{rad}}$

B  $1.6^{\text{rad}}$

C  $2.05^{\text{rad}}$

D  $-1.05^{\text{rad}}$

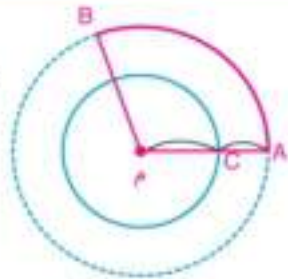
### Example

- 14 **Space:** A satellite spins around the Earth in a circular path a complete revolution every 3 hours. If the radius of the Earth approximately equals 6400 km and the distance between the moon and the surface of the earth equals 3600km, find the distance which the moon covers during one hour approximating the result to the nearest km.



**Solution**

The figure opposite shows the circular path to the motion of the moon:



$\therefore$  length of the radius of the circle of the path of the moon

$$MA = MC + CA$$

$$\therefore MA = 6400 + 3600 = 10\,000 \text{ km}$$

$\therefore$  The moon covers the circular path (complete revolution) in 3 hours which is equivalent a central angle of measure  $2\pi$

$\therefore$  The moon covers an arc of length  $\frac{1}{3}$  the circumference in one hour, which is equivalent a central angle of measure  $\frac{2\pi}{3}$

We use the formula:

$$l = \theta^{\text{rad}} \times r$$

$$r = 10000 \text{ km}, \theta^{\text{rad}} = \frac{2\pi}{3};$$

$$l = \frac{2\pi}{3} \times 10\,000$$

$$l \simeq 20944 \text{ km}$$

- 15 Sports Games:** one of the gymnastics players spins on the play device by an angle of measure  $200^\circ$ . Draw this angle in the standard position, then find its measure in radian.

**Solution**

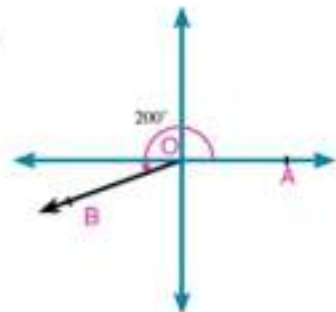
Draw the orthogonal coordinate axes which intersect at the point O. let the player spins by a directed angle AOB :

Where  $\angle (AOB) = (\overrightarrow{OA}, \overrightarrow{OB})$  then  $m(\angle AOB) = 200^\circ$ .

$$\therefore 180^\circ < 200^\circ < 270^\circ$$

$\therefore$  The terminal side of the angle lies in the third quadrant.

$$200^\circ = \frac{200 \times \pi}{180} \simeq 3.49^{\text{rad}}$$

**Try to solve**

- 4 Sports:** A squash player moved in a path is in the shape of an arc in a circle of radius 1.4 metres and the angle of rotation of the player is  $80^\circ$ . Find to the nearest length the length of this arc.

**Check your understanding**

- 16 Industry:** A disc in a machine rotates by an angle of measure  $-315^\circ$ , draw this angle in the standard position.

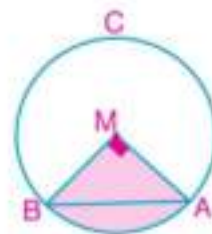
**First: Multiple choice:**

- 1 The angle of measure  $60^\circ$  in the standard position is equivalent to the angle of measure:
- A  $120^\circ$       B  $240^\circ$       C  $300^\circ$       D  $420^\circ$
- 2 The angle of measure  $\frac{31\pi}{6}$  lies in the quadrant
- A First      B second      C third      D fourth
- 3 The angle of measure  $-\frac{9\pi}{4}$  lies in the quadrant
- A First      B second      C third      D fourth
- 4 If the sum of measures of the interior angles of a regular polygon equals  $180^\circ (n - 2)$  where  $n$  is the number of its sides, then the measure of the angle of a regular pentagon in radian measure equals:
- A  $\frac{\pi}{3}$       B  $\frac{7\pi}{2}$       C  $\frac{3\pi}{5}$       D  $\frac{2\pi}{3}$
- 5 The angle of measure  $\frac{7\pi}{3}$  its degree measure equals
- A  $105^\circ$       B  $210^\circ$       C  $420^\circ$       D  $840^\circ$
- 6 If the degree measure of an angle is  $64^\circ 48'$ , then its radian measure equals
- A  $0.18^{\text{rad}}$       B  $0.36^{\text{rad}}$       C  $0.18\pi$       D  $0.36\pi$
- 7 The arc length in a circle of diameter length 24 cm and opposite to a central angle of measure  $30^\circ$  is
- A  $2\pi$  cm      B  $3\pi$  cm      C  $4\pi$  cm      D  $5\pi$  cm
- 8 The measure of the central angle in a circle of radius length 15 cm and opposite to an arc length  $5\pi$  cm equals
- A  $30^\circ$       B  $60^\circ$       C  $90^\circ$       D  $180^\circ$
- 9 If the measure of an angle of a triangle equals  $75^\circ$  and the measure of another angle equals  $\frac{\pi}{4}$ , then the radian measure of the third angle equals
- A  $\frac{\pi}{6}$       B  $\frac{\pi}{4}$       C  $\frac{\pi}{3}$       D  $\frac{5\pi}{12}$



**Second: Answer the following questions:**

- 10 In terms of  $\pi$ , find the radian measure of the following angles
- A  $225^\circ$  \_\_\_\_\_ B  $240^\circ$  \_\_\_\_\_  
 C  $-135^\circ$  \_\_\_\_\_ D  $300^\circ$  \_\_\_\_\_  
 E  $390^\circ$  \_\_\_\_\_ F  $780^\circ$  \_\_\_\_\_
- 11 Find the radian measure of the following angles approximating the result to the nearest three decimal places:
- A  $56.6^\circ$  \_\_\_\_\_ B  $25^\circ 18'$  \_\_\_\_\_ C  $160^\circ 50' 48''$  \_\_\_\_\_
- 12 Find the degree measure of the following angles approximating the result to the nearest second:
- A  $0.49^{\text{rad}}$  \_\_\_\_\_ B  $2.27^{\text{rad}}$  \_\_\_\_\_ C  $-3\frac{1}{2}^{\text{rad}}$  \_\_\_\_\_
- 13  $\theta$  is a central angle in a circle of radius  $r$  and subtends an arc of length  $L$  :
- A If  $r = 20$  cm and  $\theta = 78^\circ 15' 20''$  then find  $L$ . (to the nearest tenth)  
 B If  $L = 27.3$  cm and  $\theta = 78^\circ 0' 24''$  then find  $r$ . (to the nearest tenth)
- 14 A central angle of measure  $150^\circ$  and subtends an arc length 11cm. Calculate its radius length (to the nearest tenth ).
- 15 Find the radian and degree measure of the central angle which subtends an arc length 8.7cm in a circle of radius length 4cm.
- 16 **Geometry:** the measure of an angle of a triangle is  $60^\circ$  and the measure of another angle is  $\frac{\pi}{4}$ . Find the radian measure and the degree measure of the third angle.
- 17 **Geometry:** the radius length of a circle equals 4 cm. The inscribed angle  $\angle ABC$  of measure  $30^\circ$  is drawn in it. Find the length of the smaller arc  $\widehat{AC}$
- 18 **Geometry:** In the figure opposite: if the area of the right angled triangle  $MAB$  at  $M$  equals  $32 \text{ cm}^2$ , then find the perimeter of the coloured figure to the nearest hundredth.



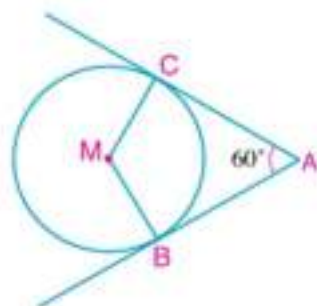
- 19 **Geometry:** the diameter length in a circle equals 24cm and the chord  $\overline{AC}$  is drawn such that  $m(\angle BAC) = 50^\circ$ . Find the length of the smaller arc  $\widehat{AC}$  approximating the result to the nearest hundredth.

- 20 **Distances:** What is the distance covered by the point on the end of the minute hand in 10 minutes, if the hand length is 6cm?

- 21 **Astronomy:** A satellite revolves around the Earth in a circular path way a full revolution every 6 hours. If the radius length of its path way equals 9000km, then find its speed in km/h.

- 22 **Geometry:** In the figure opposite:

$\overline{AB}$  and  $\overline{AC}$  are two tangent segments to circle M,  
 $m(\angle CAB) = 60^\circ$  and  $AB = 12$  cm. Find to the nearest integer the length of the greater arc  $\widehat{BC}$ .



- 23 **Time:** A sundial is used to determine the time during the day through the shadow length falling on a graduated surface to show the clock and its parts. If the shadow rotates on the disc by the rate  $15^\circ$  every hour.



- A Find the radian measure of the angle which the shadow rotates from it after 4 hours.
- B After how many hours does the shadow rotate by an angle of radian measure  $\frac{2\pi}{3}$ ?
- C The radius of a sundial is 24 cm. In terms of  $\pi$ , Find the arc length which the rotation of the shadow makes on the edge of the disc after 10 hours.
- 24 **Critical thinking:** A straight line makes an angle of radian measure  $-\frac{\pi}{3}$  with the positive direction of the  $x$ -axis in the standard position in the unit circle. Find the equation of the straight line.

# Trigonometric Functions

4 - 3

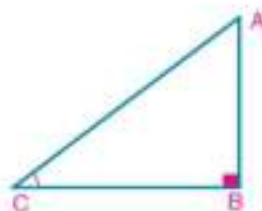


You have studied before the basic trigonometric ratios of an acute angle. In the right angled triangle ABC at B, we get:

$$\sin C = \frac{\text{opposite side}}{\text{hypotenuse}} = \frac{AB}{AC}$$

$$\cos C = \frac{\text{adjacent side}}{\text{hypotenuse}} = \frac{BC}{AC}$$

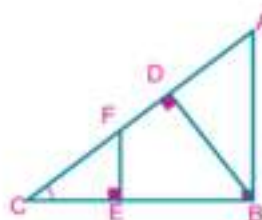
$$\tan C = \frac{\text{opposite side}}{\text{adjacent side}} = \frac{AB}{BC}$$



1- In the figure opposite, express  $\sin C$  in three different ratios.

★ Are these ratios equal? Explain your answer.

★ What do you deduce?



**Notice that:**

The triangles BAC, EFC and DBC are similar (why?)

From similarity, then:  $\frac{BA}{AC} = \frac{EF}{FC} = \frac{DB}{BC} = \sin C$  (why?)

i.e.: the trigonometric ratio of an acute angle is constant and does not change except the angle itself is changed.

2- The figure opposite shows a quarter of a circle of radius  $r$  cm

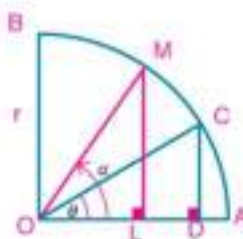
where:  $m(\angle DOC) = \theta$

$$\sin \theta = \frac{CD}{r}$$

when  $m(\angle DOC)$  increases to  $\alpha$

$$\text{then } \sin \alpha = \frac{ML}{r}$$

i.e. The trigonometric ratio varies as the measure of its angle, which is known as the trigonometric functions.



## You will Learn

- Unit circle,
- Basic trigonometric functions
- Reciprocals of basic trigonometric functions,
- Signs of the trigonometric functions,
- Trigonometric functions of some special angles.

## Key - Terms

- Trigonometric Function
- Sine (sin)
- Cosine (cos)
- Tangent (tan)
- Cosecant (csc)
- Secant (sec)
- Cotangent (cot)

## Learning tools

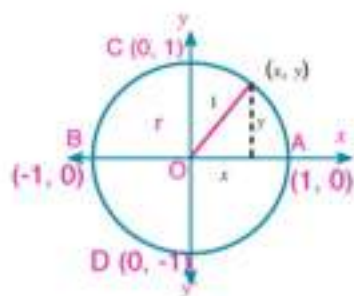
- Scientific calculator.



### The unit circle

In any orthogonal coordinate system, a circle of centre at the origin point and of radius equals the unit of length is called a unit circle.

- ★ The unit circle intersects the  $x$ -axis at the two points A (1, 0) and B (-1, 0), and intersects the  $y$ -axis at the two points C (0, 1) and D (0, -1).
- ★ If  $(x, y)$  are the coordinates of any point on the unit circle:  
then  $x \in [-1, 1]$  ,  $y \in [-1, 1]$ .  
where  $x^2 + y^2 = 1$  Pythagorean theorem



### The basic trigonometric functions of an angle

for any directed angle in the standard position, and its terminal side intersects the unit circle at the point B(x, y) and its measure  $\theta$ , it is possible to define the following functions:

- 1- cosine of the angle  $\theta = x$ -coordinate of point B

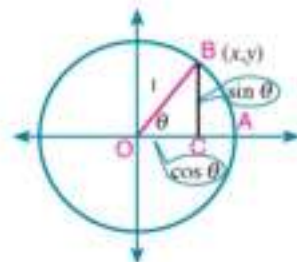
i.e.:  $\cos \theta = x$

- 2- sine of the angle  $\theta = y$ -coordinate of point B

i.e.:  $\sin \theta = y$

- 3- tangent of the angle  $\theta = \frac{y\text{-coordinate of point B}}{x\text{-coordinate of point B}}$

i.e.:  $\tan \theta = \frac{y}{x}$  where  $x \neq 0$  ,  $\tan \theta = \frac{\sin \theta}{\cos \theta}$  where  $\cos \theta \neq 0$



**Notice that:** the ordered pair  $(x, y)$  of any point on the unit circle is written in the form  $(\cos \theta, \sin \theta)$

If the point  $C(\frac{3}{5}, \frac{4}{5})$  is the point of intersection of the terminal side of a directed angle of measure  $\theta$  with the unit circle

then:  $\cos \theta = \frac{3}{5}$  ,  $\sin \theta = \frac{4}{5}$  and  $\tan \theta = \frac{4}{3}$

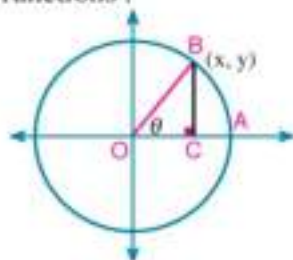
### Reciprocals of the basic trigonometric functions

For any directed angle in the standard position and its terminal side intersects the unit circle at the point B(x, y) and its measure is  $\theta$ , then there are the following functions :

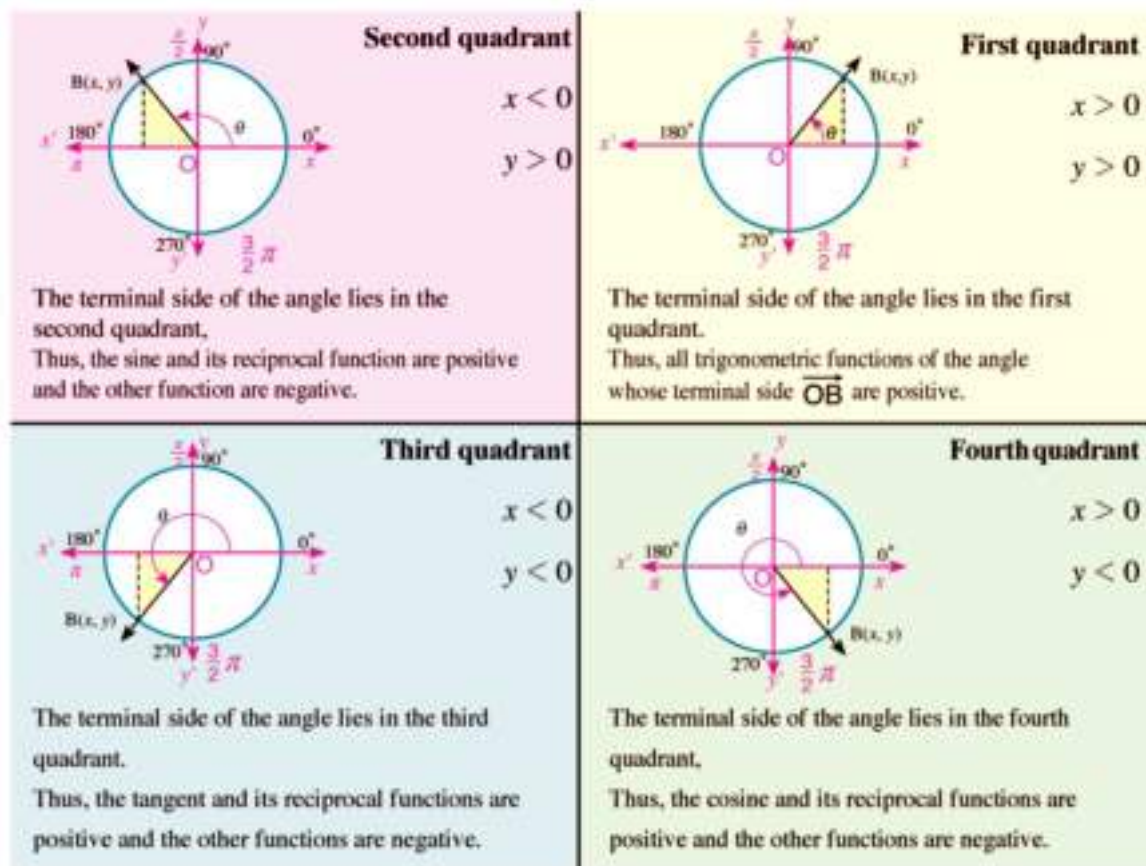
- 1- secant of the angle  $\theta$  :  $\sec \theta = \frac{1}{x} = \frac{1}{\cos \theta}$  where  $x \neq 0$

- 2- Cosecant of the angle  $\theta$  :  $\csc \theta = \frac{1}{y} = \frac{1}{\sin \theta}$  where  $y \neq 0$

- 3- Cotangent of the angle  $\theta$  :  $\cot \theta = \frac{x}{y} = \frac{1}{\tan \theta}$  where  $y \neq 0$

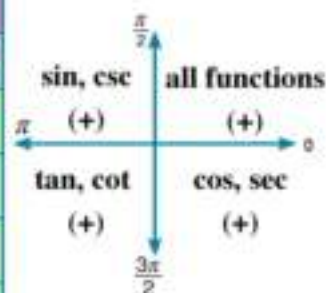


## Signs of the Trigonometric Functions



Summary of signs of all trigonometric ratios:

the quadrant in which the terminal side of the angle lies	the interval in which the measure of the angle belongs	signs of trigonometric functions		
		csc, sin	cos, sec	tan, cot
First	$[0, \frac{\pi}{2}]$	+	+	+
Second	$[\frac{\pi}{2}, \pi]$	+	-	-
Third	$[\pi, \frac{3\pi}{2}]$	-	-	+
Fourth	$[\frac{3\pi}{2}, 2\pi]$	-	+	-



## Example

1 Determine the sign of each of the following ratios:

A  $\sin 130^\circ$

B  $\tan 315^\circ$

C  $\cos 650^\circ$

D  $\sec (-30^\circ)$

## Solution

 A The angle of measure  $130^\circ$  lies in the second quadrant

 $\therefore \sin 130^\circ$  positive

- B** The angle of measure  $315^\circ$  lies in the fourth quadrant  $\therefore \tan 315^\circ$  negative
- C** The angle of measure  $650^\circ$  is equivalent to the angle of measure  $650^\circ - 360^\circ = 290^\circ$   
 $\therefore$  The angle of measure  $650^\circ$  lies in the fourth quadrant  $\therefore \cos 650^\circ$  is positive.
- D** The angle of measure  $(-30^\circ)$  is equivalent to the angle of measure  $-30^\circ + 360^\circ = 330^\circ$   
 The angle of measure  $(-30^\circ)$  lies in the fourth quadrant  $\therefore \sec(-30^\circ)$  is positive.

### Try to solve

- 1 Determine the sign of each of the following ratios:
- A**  $\cos 210^\circ$       **B**  $\sin 740^\circ$       **C**  $\tan -300^\circ$       **D**  $\sin 1230^\circ$

### Example

- 2 If  $\angle AOB$  is in the standard position and its terminal side intersects the unit circle at the point B and its measure is  $\theta$ . Find the basic trigonometric ratios to the angle AOB, if the coordinates of the point B are as follows:
- A**  $(0, -1)$       **B**  $(\frac{1}{\sqrt{2}}, y)$       **C**  $(-x, x)$   
 where  $x > 0$  ,  $y > 0$

### Solution

**A**  $\cos \theta = 0$  ,  $\sin \theta = -1$  ,  $\tan \theta = \frac{-1}{0}$  (undefined)

**B**  $x^2 + y^2 = 1$  (unit circle) ,  $x = \frac{1}{\sqrt{2}}$   
 $(\frac{1}{\sqrt{2}})^2 + y^2 = 1$  then  $y^2 = 1 - \frac{1}{2} = \frac{1}{2}$   
 $\therefore y = \frac{1}{\sqrt{2}} > 0$  ,  $y = -\frac{1}{\sqrt{2}} < 0$  (refused)  
 $\therefore \cos \theta = \frac{1}{\sqrt{2}}$  ,  $\sin \theta = \frac{1}{\sqrt{2}}$  ,  $\tan \theta = 1$

**C**  $(-x)^2 + (x)^2 = 1$   $\therefore 2x^2 = 1$   $\therefore x = \frac{1}{\sqrt{2}}$  because  $x > 0$   
 then:  $\cos \theta = -\frac{1}{\sqrt{2}}$  ,  $\sin \theta = \frac{1}{\sqrt{2}}$  ,  $\tan \theta = -1$

- 3 If  $270^\circ < \theta < 360^\circ$  ,  $\sin \theta = -\frac{5}{13}$  find all basic trigonometric ratios of  $\theta$

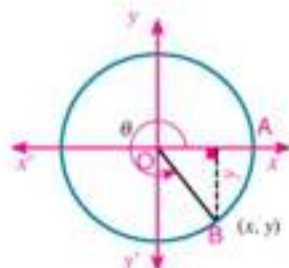
### Solution

let  $m(\angle AOB) = \theta$  where  $\theta$  lies in the fourth quadrant , and the coordinates of the point B are  $(x, y)$

$\therefore y = \sin \theta = -\frac{5}{13}$  ,  $x = \cos \theta$  where  $\cos \theta > 0$

$\therefore x^2 + y^2 = 1$   $\therefore \cos^2 \theta + (-\frac{5}{13})^2 = 1$

$\therefore \cos^2 \theta = 1 - \frac{25}{169}$   $\therefore \cos^2 \theta = \frac{144}{169}$  ,  $\cos \theta = \frac{12}{13}$  or  $\cos \theta = -\frac{12}{13}$   
 $\cos \theta = \frac{12}{13}$  (why?)  $\tan \theta = -\frac{12}{5}$



### Try to solve



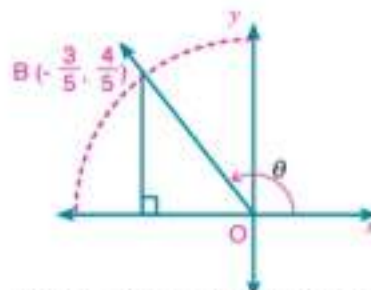
- 2 If  $90^\circ < \theta < 180^\circ$ ,  $\sin \theta = \frac{4}{5}$  find  $\cos \theta$ ,  $\tan \theta$  where  $\theta$  is an angle in the standard position in a unit circle.

### Example

- 4 If the angle  $\theta$  is drawn in the standard position and its terminal side passes through the point  $B(-\frac{3}{5}, \frac{4}{5})$ , then find all trigonometric ratios of the angle  $\theta$ .

### Solution

$$\begin{aligned}\sin \theta &= \frac{4}{5}, & \cos \theta &= \frac{-3}{5} = -\frac{3}{5}, & \tan \theta &= \frac{4}{-3} = -\frac{4}{3} \\ \csc \theta &= \frac{5}{4}, & \sec \theta &= \frac{5}{-3} = -\frac{5}{3}, & \cot \theta &= \frac{-3}{4} = -\frac{3}{4}\end{aligned}$$



### Try to solve

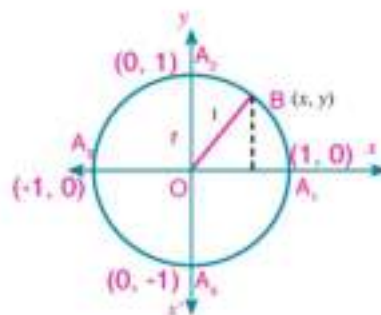
- 3 Find all trigonometric ratios of angle  $\theta$  drawn in the standard position whose terminal side passes through the following points:
- A  $(\frac{5}{13}, \frac{12}{13})$       B  $(\frac{3}{5}, -\frac{4}{5})$       C  $(-\frac{12}{13}, \frac{5}{13})$

### Trigonometric ratios of some special angles

In the figure opposite: the unit circle intersected the two axes at the points

$$A_1(1, 0), A_2(0, 1), A_3(-1, 0), A_4(0, -1).$$

and  $\theta$  is the measure of the directed angle  $\angle AOB$  in the standard position and its terminal side  $\overrightarrow{OB}$  intersects the unit circle at B.



first: If  $\theta = 0^\circ$  or  $\theta = 360^\circ$  at:  $B(1, 0)$

$$\begin{aligned}\text{then: } \cos 0^\circ &= \cos 360^\circ = 1, & \sin 0^\circ &= \sin 360^\circ = 0, \\ \tan 0^\circ &= \tan 360^\circ = 0\end{aligned}$$

second: If  $\theta = 90^\circ = \frac{\pi}{2}$  at:  $B(0, 1)$

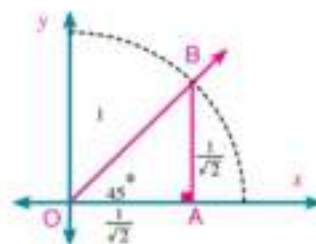
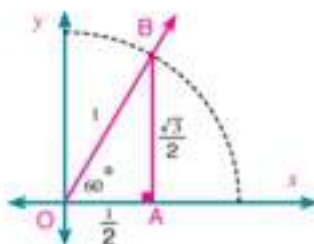
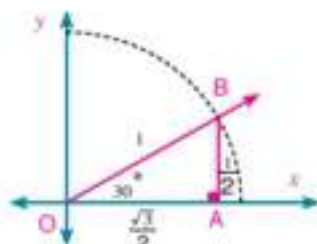
$$\text{then: } \cos 90^\circ = 0, \quad \sin 90^\circ = 1, \quad \tan = \frac{1}{0} \quad (\text{undefined})$$

third: If  $\theta = 180^\circ = \pi$  at:  $B(-1, 0)$

$$\text{then: } \cos 180^\circ = -1, \quad \sin 180^\circ = 0, \quad \tan 180^\circ = 0$$

**fourth:** If  $\theta^\circ = 270^\circ = \frac{3\pi}{2}$  at:  $B(0, -1)$   
 then  $\cos 270^\circ = 0$  ,  $\sin 270^\circ = -1$  ,  $\tan 270^\circ = \frac{-1}{0}$  (undefined)

In the following figures, determine the coordinates of the point B for each figure and deduce the trigonometric ratios to the measures of angles:  $30^\circ$ ,  $60^\circ$ ,  $45^\circ$



### Example

- 5 Prove without using the calculator that:  $\sin 60^\circ \cos 30^\circ - \cos 60^\circ \sin 30^\circ = \sin^2 \frac{\pi}{4}$

### Solution

You know that  $\sin 30^\circ = \frac{1}{2}$  ,  $\cos 30^\circ = \frac{\sqrt{3}}{2}$  ,  $\sin 60^\circ = \frac{\sqrt{3}}{2}$  ,  $\cos 60^\circ = \frac{1}{2}$

$$\therefore \text{L.H.S} = \frac{\sqrt{3}}{2} \times \frac{\sqrt{3}}{2} - \frac{1}{2} \times \frac{1}{2} = \frac{3}{4} - \frac{1}{4} = \frac{1}{2} \quad (1)$$

$$\therefore \frac{\pi}{4} = 45^\circ \text{ , } \sin 45^\circ = \frac{1}{\sqrt{2}}$$

$$\text{R.H.S} = \sin^2 \frac{\pi}{4} = \sin^2 45^\circ = \left(\frac{1}{\sqrt{2}}\right)^2 = \frac{1}{2} \quad (2)$$

From (1) and (2)  $\therefore$  the two sides are equal.

### Try to solve

- 4 Find the value of:  $3 \sin 30^\circ \sin 60^\circ - \cos 0^\circ \sec 60^\circ + \sin 270^\circ \cos^2 45^\circ$

- 5 **Critical thinking:** If the angle  $\theta$  is drawn in the standard position and  $\cos \theta = \frac{-1}{2}$  ,

$$\sin \theta = \frac{\sqrt{3}}{2}$$

Is it possible that  $m(\angle \theta) = 240^\circ$ ? Explain your answer



### Check your understanding

Prove that each of the following equality:

**A**  $1 - 2\sin^2 90^\circ = \cos 180^\circ$

**B**  $\cos \frac{\pi}{2} = \cos^2 \frac{\pi}{4} - \sin^2 \frac{\pi}{4}$



## Exercises (4 - 3)



## First: Multiple Choice:

- 1 If  $\theta$  is an angle in the standard position and its terminal side passes through the point  $(\frac{1}{2}, \frac{\sqrt{3}}{2})$ , then  $\sin \theta$  equals:
 

A $\frac{1}{2}$	B $\frac{1}{\sqrt{3}}$	C $\frac{\sqrt{3}}{2}$	D $\frac{2}{\sqrt{3}}$
-----------------	------------------------	------------------------	------------------------
- 2 If  $\sin \theta = \frac{1}{2}$  where  $\theta$  is an acute angle, then  $m(\angle \theta)$  equals
 

A $30^\circ$	B $45^\circ$	C $60^\circ$	D $90^\circ$
--------------	--------------	--------------	--------------
- 3 If  $\sin \theta = -1$ ,  $\cos \theta = 0$ , then the measure of angle  $\theta$  equals
 

A $\frac{\pi}{2}$	B $\pi$	C $\frac{3\pi}{2}$	D $2\pi$
-------------------	---------	--------------------	----------
- 4 If  $\csc \theta = 2$  where  $\theta$  is the measure of an acute angle, then measure of angle  $\theta$  equals
 

A $15^\circ$	B $30^\circ$	C $45^\circ$	D $60^\circ$
--------------	--------------	--------------	--------------
- 5 If  $\cos \theta = \frac{1}{2}$ ,  $\sin \theta = -\frac{\sqrt{3}}{2}$ , then measure of angle  $\theta$  equals
 

A $\frac{2\pi}{3}$	B $\frac{5\pi}{6}$	C $\frac{5\pi}{3}$	D $\frac{11\pi}{6}$
--------------------	--------------------	--------------------	---------------------
- 6 If  $\tan \theta = 1$  where  $\theta$  is a positive acute angle, then measure of angle  $\theta$  equals
 

A $10^\circ$	B $30^\circ$	C $45^\circ$	D $60^\circ$
--------------	--------------	--------------	--------------
- 7  $\tan 45^\circ + \cot 45^\circ - \sec 60^\circ$  equals
 

A Zero	B $\frac{1}{2}$	C $\frac{\sqrt{3}}{2}$	D 1
--------	-----------------	------------------------	-----
- 8 If  $\cos \theta = \frac{\sqrt{3}}{2}$  where  $\theta$  is an acute angle, then  $\sin \theta$  equals
 

A $\frac{1}{2}$	B $\frac{1}{\sqrt{3}}$	C $\frac{2}{\sqrt{3}}$	D $\frac{\sqrt{3}}{2}$
-----------------	------------------------	------------------------	------------------------

## Second: Answer the following questions:

- 9 Find all trigonometric functions of angle  $\theta$  drawn in the standard position and its terminal side intersects the unit circle and passes through each of the following points.
 

A $(\frac{2}{3}, \frac{\sqrt{5}}{3})$	B $(\frac{\sqrt{2}}{2}, \frac{\sqrt{2}}{2})$	C $(\frac{\sqrt{3}}{2}, \frac{1}{2})$	D $(-\frac{3}{5}, \frac{4}{5})$
---------------------------------------	--	---------------------------------------	---------------------------------
- 10 If  $\theta$  is the measure of the directed angle in the standard position and its terminal side intersects the unit circle at the given point, find all trigonometric function of the angle  $\theta$  in each of the following cases :
 

A $(3a, -4a)$ where $a > 0$	B $(\frac{3}{2}a, -2a)$ where $\frac{3\pi}{2} < \theta < 2\pi$
-----------------------------	--



- 11 Determine the sign of each of the following trigonometric function:

A  $\sin 240^\circ$

B  $\tan 365^\circ$

C  $\csc 410^\circ$

D  $\cot \frac{9\pi}{4}$

E  $\sec -\frac{9\pi}{4}$

F  $\tan \frac{-20\pi}{9}$

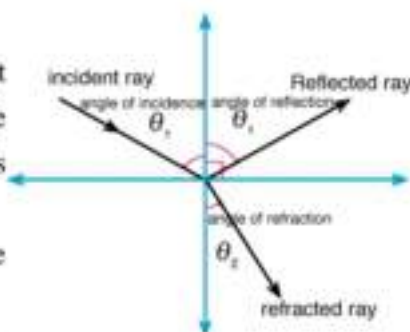
- 12 Find the value of each of the following:

A  $\cos \frac{\pi}{2} \times \cos 0 + \sin \frac{3\pi}{2} \times \sin \frac{\pi}{2}$

B  $\tan^2 30^\circ + 2 \sin^2 45^\circ + \cos^2 90^\circ$

- 13 **Physics:** When the sun rays fall on a translucent surface, they are reflected the same angle of incidence but some are refracted when they pass through this surface as shown in the figure opposite.

If  $\sin \theta_1 = K \sin \theta_2$  and  $K = \sqrt{3}$ ,  $\theta_1 = 60^\circ$ , find measure of angle  $\theta_2$ .



- 14 **Discover the error:** The teacher asked the students to find the value of  $2 \sin 45^\circ$ .

Karim's answer

$$2 \sin 45^\circ = \sin 2 \times 45^\circ \\ = \sin 90^\circ = 1$$

Ahmed's answer

$$2 \sin 45 = 2 \times \frac{1}{\sqrt{2}} = \frac{2}{\sqrt{2}} \times \frac{\sqrt{2}}{\sqrt{2}} \\ = \sqrt{2}$$

Which of the two answers is correct? why?

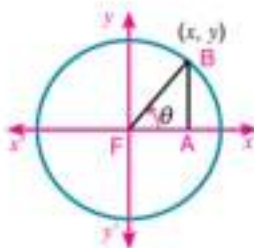
- 15 **Critical thinking:** If  $\theta$  is an angle drawn in the standard position where  $\cot \theta = -1$  and  $\csc \theta = \sqrt{2}$ . Is it possible that  $m(\angle \theta) = \frac{3\pi}{4}$ ? Explain your answer.

## Related Angles



You have studied before the reflection and you have recognized its properties.

The figure opposite shows the directed angle AOB in the standard position and its terminal side intersects the unit circle at the point B(x, y) and its measure is  $\theta$  where  $0^\circ < \theta < 90^\circ$ .

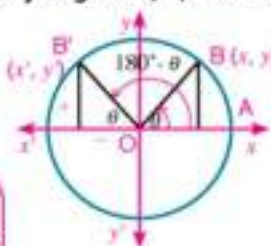


Determine the point B' which is the image of the point B by reflection in the y-axis. And mention its coordinates.

What is the measure of  $\angle AOB'$ ? Is the angle  $\angle AOB'$  in the standard position?

### 1- Trigonometric functions of two supplementary angles $\theta$ , $(180^\circ - \theta)$

In the figure opposite, B' (x', y') is the image of the point B(x, y) by reflection in the y-axis, then  $x' = -x$ ,  $y' = y$  thus:



$$\begin{aligned}\sin(180^\circ - \theta) &= \sin \theta, \csc(180^\circ - \theta) = \csc \theta \\ \cos(180^\circ - \theta) &= -\cos \theta, \sec(180^\circ - \theta) = -\sec \theta \\ \tan(180^\circ - \theta) &= -\tan \theta, \cot(180^\circ - \theta) = -\cot \theta\end{aligned}$$

**For example:**  $\cos 120^\circ = \cos(180^\circ - 60^\circ) = -\cos 60^\circ = -\frac{1}{2}$   
 $\sin 135^\circ = \sin(180^\circ - 45^\circ) = \sin 45^\circ = \frac{1}{\sqrt{2}}$

### Try to solve

1 find  $\tan 135^\circ$ ,  $\sin 120^\circ$ ,  $\cos 150^\circ$

**Notice that:**  $\theta + (180^\circ - \theta) = 180^\circ$

it is said that the two angles  $\theta$ ,  $180^\circ - \theta$  are related angles.

### Definition

**The related angles:** are angles that the difference or the sum of their measures equals a whole number of right angles.

### You will Learn

- Relation between trigonometric functions of angles  $\theta$ ,  $180^\circ \pm \theta$
- Relation between trigonometric functions of angles  $\theta$ ,  $360^\circ - \theta$
- Relation between trigonometric functions of angles  $\theta$ ,  $90^\circ \pm \theta$
- Relation between trigonometric functions of angles  $\theta$ ,  $270^\circ \pm \theta$
- The general solution of trigonometric equations in the form:
  - $\sin \alpha = \cos \beta$
  - $\sec \alpha = \csc \beta$
  - $\tan \alpha = \cot \beta$

### Key - Terms

- Related Angles

### Learning tools

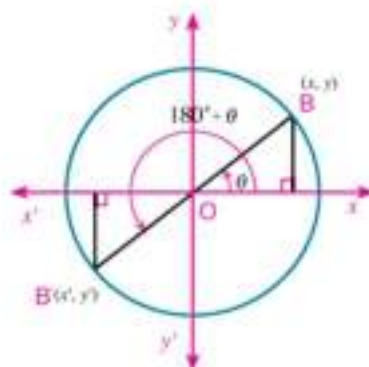
- Scientific calculator

## 2- Trigonometric functions of angles of measures $\theta$ , $(180^\circ + \theta)$

In the figure opposite :

$B'(x', y')$  is the image of the point  $B(x, y)$  then  $x' = -x$ , by reflection in the origin point then  $y' = -y$  thus:

$$\begin{aligned}\sin(180^\circ + \theta) &= -\sin \theta & \csc(180^\circ + \theta) &= -\csc \theta \\ \cos(180^\circ + \theta) &= -\cos \theta & \sec(180^\circ + \theta) &= -\sec \theta \\ \tan(180^\circ + \theta) &= \tan \theta & \cot(180^\circ + \theta) &= \cot \theta\end{aligned}$$



For example:

$$\begin{aligned}\sin 210^\circ &= \sin(180^\circ + 30^\circ) = -\sin 30^\circ = -\frac{1}{2} \\ \cos 225^\circ &= \cos(180^\circ + 45^\circ) = -\cos 45^\circ = -\frac{1}{\sqrt{2}} \\ \tan 240^\circ &= \tan(180^\circ + 60^\circ) = \tan 60^\circ = \sqrt{3}\end{aligned}$$

### Try to solve

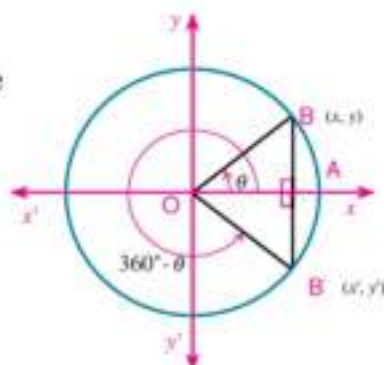
- ② Find  $\sin 225^\circ$  ,  $\cos 210^\circ$  ,  $\sec 600^\circ$  ,  $\cot 225^\circ$ .

## 3- Trigonometric functions of angles of measures $\theta$ , $(360^\circ - \theta)$

In the figure opposite:

$B'(x', y')$  is the image of the point  $B(x, y)$  by reflection in the  $x$ -axis then  $x' = x$  ,  $y' = -y$ :

$$\begin{aligned}\sin(360^\circ - \theta) &= -\sin \theta & \csc(360^\circ - \theta) &= -\csc \theta \\ \cos(360^\circ - \theta) &= \cos \theta & \sec(360^\circ - \theta) &= \sec \theta \\ \tan(360^\circ - \theta) &= -\tan \theta & \cot(360^\circ - \theta) &= -\cot \theta\end{aligned}$$



For example:

$$\begin{aligned}\sin 330^\circ &= \sin(360^\circ - 30^\circ) = -\sin 30^\circ = -\frac{1}{2} \\ \cos 315^\circ &= \cos(360^\circ - 45^\circ) = \cos 45^\circ = \frac{1}{\sqrt{2}}\end{aligned}$$

### Try to solve

- ③ Find:  $\sin 315^\circ$  ,  $\csc 315^\circ$  ,  $\tan 330^\circ$  ,  $\tan 300^\circ$

**Critical thinking:** How can you find the value of  $\sin(-45^\circ)$  ,  $\cos(-60^\circ)$  ,  $\tan(-30^\circ)$  ,  $\sin 690^\circ$ .

#### Notice that

the trigonometric ratios of angle  $(-\theta)$  are the same as the trigonometric ratios of angle  $(360^\circ - \theta)$



**Example**

- 16 Without using the calculator, find the value of the expression :  
 $\sin 150^\circ \cos (-300^\circ) + \cos 930^\circ \cot 240^\circ$

**Solution**

$$\begin{aligned}
 \sin 150^\circ &= \sin (180^\circ - 30^\circ) = \sin 30^\circ = \frac{1}{2} \\
 \cos (-300^\circ) &= \cos (-300^\circ + 360^\circ) = \cos 60^\circ = \frac{1}{2} \\
 \cos 930^\circ &= \cos (930^\circ - 2 \times 360^\circ) = \cos 210^\circ \\
 \text{then } \cos 210^\circ &= \cos (180^\circ + 30^\circ) = -\cos 30^\circ = -\frac{\sqrt{3}}{2} \\
 \cot 240^\circ &= \cot (180^\circ + 60^\circ) = \cot 60^\circ = \frac{1}{\tan 60^\circ} = \frac{1}{\sqrt{3}} \\
 \text{the expression} &= \frac{1}{2} \times \frac{1}{2} + \left(-\frac{\sqrt{3}}{2}\right) \times \frac{1}{\sqrt{3}} \\
 &= \frac{1}{4} - \frac{1}{2} = -\frac{1}{4}
 \end{aligned}$$

**Try to solve**

- 4 Prove that:  $\sin 600^\circ \cos (-30^\circ) + \sin 150^\circ \cos (-240^\circ) = -1$

**4 Trigonometric functions of two complementary angles  $\theta$  and  $(90^\circ - \theta)$** 

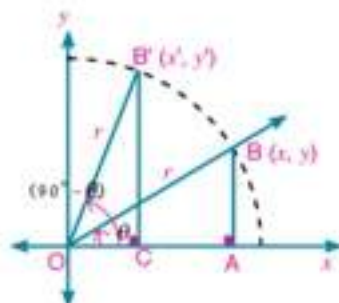
The figure opposite shows a part of a circle of centre O.

The angle  $\theta$  is drawn in the standard position to a circle of radius  $r$ .

from congruency of the two triangles OAB, OCB':

**we get:**  $x' = y$  ,  $y' = x$

Thus, it is possible to deduce all trigonometric functions of angles  $\theta$  and  $(90^\circ - \theta)$  as follows:



$$\begin{aligned}
 \sin (90^\circ - \theta) &= \cos \theta , & \csc (90^\circ - \theta) &= \sec \theta \\
 \cos (90^\circ - \theta) &= \sin \theta , & \sec (90^\circ - \theta) &= \csc \theta \\
 \tan (90^\circ - \theta) &= \cot \theta , & \cot (90^\circ - \theta) &= \tan \theta
 \end{aligned}$$

**Example**

- 1 If the angle  $\theta$  is in the standard position, and its terminal side passes through the point  $(\frac{3}{5}, \frac{4}{5})$  then find the trigonometric functions:  $\sin (90^\circ - \theta)$  ,  $\cot (90^\circ - \theta)$

### Solution

$$\therefore \sin (90^\circ - \theta) = \cos \theta$$

$$\therefore \sin (90^\circ - \theta) = \frac{3}{5}$$

$$\therefore \cot (90^\circ - \theta) = \tan \theta$$

$$\therefore \cot (90^\circ - \theta) = \frac{4}{3}$$

### Try to solve

- 5 In the previous example, find  $\cos (90^\circ - \theta)$  ,  $\csc (90^\circ - \theta)$

## 5- trigonometric functions of angles of measures $\theta$ and $(90^\circ + \theta)$

From congruency of the two triangles  $B' C' O$  ,  $O C B$

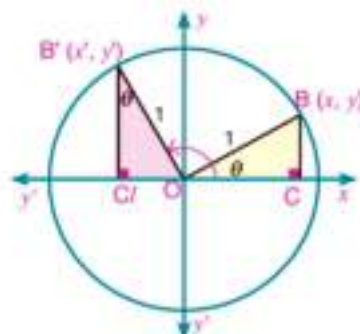
We get  $y' = x$  ,  $x' = -y$

thus , its is possible to deduce all trigonometric functions of angles  $\theta$  and  $(90^\circ + \theta)$  as follows:

$$\sin (90^\circ + \theta) = \cos \theta \quad , \quad \csc (90^\circ + \theta) = \sec \theta$$

$$\cos (90^\circ + \theta) = -\sin \theta \quad , \quad \sec (90^\circ + \theta) = -\csc \theta$$

$$\tan (90^\circ + \theta) = -\cot \theta \quad , \quad \cot (90^\circ + \theta) = -\tan \theta$$



### Example

- 2 If the angle  $\theta$  is in the standard position and its terminal side passes through the point  $(\frac{1}{3}, \frac{2\sqrt{2}}{3})$

Find the trigonometric functions of :  $\tan (90^\circ + \theta)$  ,  $\csc (90^\circ + \theta)$

### Solution

$$\therefore \tan (90^\circ + \theta) = -\cot \theta \quad \therefore \tan (90^\circ + \theta) = -\frac{1}{\frac{2\sqrt{2}}{3}} = -\frac{\sqrt{2}}{4}$$

$$\therefore \csc (90^\circ + \theta) = \sec \theta \quad \therefore \csc (90^\circ + \theta) = 3$$

### Try to solve

- 6 In the previous example, find :  $\sin (90^\circ + \theta)$  ,  $\sec (90^\circ + \theta)$

**6- Trigonometric functions of angles of measures  $\theta$  and  $(270^\circ - \theta)$** 

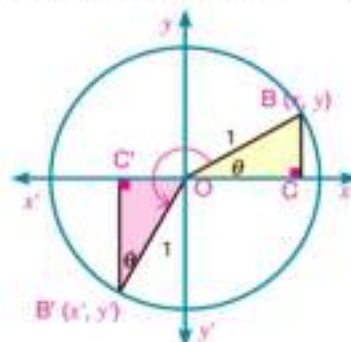
From congruency of the two triangles BCO, OCB

Thus, it is possible to deduce all trigonometric functions of the two angles  $\theta$  and  $(270^\circ - \theta)$  as follows:

$$\sin(270^\circ - \theta) = -\cos \theta, \quad \csc(270^\circ - \theta) = -\sec \theta$$

$$\cos(270^\circ - \theta) = -\sin \theta, \quad \sec(270^\circ - \theta) = -\csc \theta$$

$$\tan(270^\circ - \theta) = \cot \theta, \quad \cot(270^\circ - \theta) = \tan \theta$$

**Example**

- ③ If the angle  $\theta$  is drawn in the standard position, its terminal side passes through the point  $(\frac{\sqrt{3}}{2}, \frac{1}{2})$  then find the trigonometric ratios of  $\cos(270^\circ - \theta)$ ,  $\cot(270^\circ - \theta)$

**Solution**

$$\because \cos(270^\circ - \theta) = -\sin \theta \quad \therefore \cos(270^\circ - \theta) = -\frac{1}{2} = -\frac{1}{2}$$

$$\because \cot(270^\circ - \theta) = \tan \theta \quad \therefore \cot(270^\circ - \theta) = \frac{2}{\sqrt{3}} = \frac{1}{\sqrt{3}}$$

**Try to solve**

- ⑦ In the previous example, find  $\tan(270^\circ - \theta)$ ,  $\csc(270^\circ - \theta)$

**7- Trigonometric functions of angles of measures  $\theta$  and  $(270^\circ + \theta)$** 

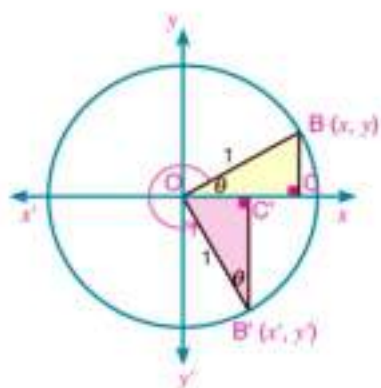
From congruency of the two triangles: B' C' O, O C

Thus, it is possible to deduce all trigonometric functions of angles  $\theta$  and  $(270^\circ + \theta)$  as follows:

$$\sin(270^\circ + \theta) = -\cos \theta, \quad \csc(270^\circ + \theta) = -\sec \theta$$

$$\cos(270^\circ + \theta) = \sin \theta, \quad \sec(270^\circ + \theta) = \csc \theta$$

$$\tan(270^\circ + \theta) = -\cot \theta, \quad \cot(270^\circ + \theta) = -\tan \theta$$

**Example**

- ④ If the angle  $\theta$  is in the standard position, its terminal side passes through the point  $(\frac{\sqrt{5}}{3}, \frac{2}{3})$  then find the trigonometric ratios of:  $\sin(270^\circ + \theta)$ ,  $\sec(270^\circ + \theta)$



**Solution**

$$\therefore \sin(270^\circ + \theta) = -\cos \theta$$

$$\therefore \sin(270^\circ + \theta) = -\frac{\sqrt{5}}{3}$$

$$\therefore \sec(270^\circ + \theta) = -\csc \theta$$

$$\therefore \sec(270^\circ + \theta) = -\frac{3}{2}$$

**Try to solve**

- 8 In the previous example, find  $\cot(270^\circ + \theta)$ ,  $\csc(270^\circ + \theta)$ .

**General solution of trigonometric equations in the form**

$$[\sin(\alpha) = \cos(\beta), \sec(\alpha) = \csc(\beta), \tan(\alpha) = \cot(\beta)]$$



you have studied before that, if  $\alpha$  and  $\beta$  are the measures of two complementary angles (their sum equals  $90^\circ$ ) then  $\sin \alpha = \cos \beta$ ,  $\sec \alpha = \csc \beta$ ,  $\tan \alpha = \cot \beta$ , hence  $\alpha + \beta = 90^\circ$  where  $\alpha$  and  $\beta$  are two acute angles. If  $\sin \theta = \cos 15^\circ$  then what are expected values of  $\theta$ ?



- 1- If  $\sin \alpha = \cos \beta$  (where  $\alpha, \beta$  are the measures of two complementary angles) then:

$$\Rightarrow \sin \alpha = \sin\left(\frac{\pi}{2} - \beta\right) \quad \text{hence: } \alpha = \frac{\pi}{2} - \beta \quad \text{i.e.} \quad \alpha + \beta = \frac{\pi}{2}$$

$$\Rightarrow \sin \alpha = \sin\left(\frac{\pi}{2} + \beta\right) \quad \text{hence: } \alpha = \frac{\pi}{2} + \beta \quad \text{i.e.} \quad \alpha - \beta = \frac{\pi}{2}$$

Add  $2\pi n$  (where  $n \in \mathbb{Z}$ ) to the angle  $\frac{\pi}{2}$  then:

$$\text{when } \sin \alpha = \cos \beta \text{ then } \alpha \pm \beta = \frac{\pi}{2} + 2\pi n$$

( $n \in \mathbb{Z}$ ), similarly:

$$\text{when } \csc \alpha = \sec \beta \text{ then } \alpha \pm \beta = \frac{\pi}{2} + 2\pi n$$

( $n \in \mathbb{Z}$ ),

$$\alpha \neq n\pi, \quad \beta \neq (2n+1)\frac{\pi}{2}$$

- 2- If  $\tan \alpha = \cot \beta$  (where  $\alpha, \beta$  are the measure of two complementary angles) then:

$$\Rightarrow \tan \alpha = \tan\left(\frac{\pi}{2} - \beta\right) \quad \text{hence: } \alpha = \frac{\pi}{2} - \beta \quad \text{i.e.} \quad \alpha + \beta = \frac{\pi}{2}$$

$$\Rightarrow \tan \alpha = \tan\left(\frac{3\pi}{2} - \beta\right) \quad \text{hence: } \alpha = \frac{3\pi}{2} - \beta \quad \text{i.e.} \quad \alpha + \beta = \frac{3\pi}{2}$$

Add  $2\pi n$  (where  $n \in \mathbb{Z}$ ) to the two angles  $\frac{\pi}{2}$  and  $\frac{3\pi}{2}$  then:

$$\text{when } \tan \alpha = \cot \beta \text{ then } \alpha + \beta = \frac{\pi}{2} + \pi n$$

(where  $n \in \mathbb{Z}$ ),

$$\alpha \neq (2n+1)\frac{\pi}{2}, \quad \beta \neq n\pi$$

**Example**

- 5 Solve the equation:  $\sin 2\theta = \cos \theta$

**Solution**

The equation:  $\sin 2\theta = \cos \theta$

$$2\theta \pm \theta = \frac{\pi}{2} + 2\pi n \quad (n \in \mathbb{Z}) \quad \text{from definition of equation}$$

(1) either  $2\theta + \theta = \frac{\pi}{2} + 2\pi n$  i.e.:  $3\theta = \frac{\pi}{2} + 2\pi n$

$$\theta = \frac{\pi}{6} + \frac{2}{3}\pi n \quad \text{divide both sides by 3}$$

(2) or  $2\theta - \theta = \frac{\pi}{2} + 2\pi n$  i.e.:  $\theta = \frac{\pi}{2} + 2\pi n$

Solution of the equation:  $\frac{\pi}{6} + \frac{2}{3}\pi n$  or  $\frac{\pi}{2} + 2\pi n$

**Try to solve**

- 9 Find the general solution of each of the following equations:

A  $\sin 4\theta = \cos 2\theta$

B  $2\sin\left(\frac{\pi}{2} - \theta\right) = 1$

C  $\cos 5\theta = \sin \theta$

- 10 **Discover the error:** In one of the mathematical competitions, the teacher asked karim and Ziad to find the value of  $\sin\left(\theta - \frac{\pi}{2}\right)$  then who of them has a correct answer? Explain your answer.

**karim's answer**

$$\begin{aligned} \sin\left(\theta - \frac{\pi}{2}\right) &= \sin\left(2\pi + \theta - \frac{\pi}{2}\right) \\ &= \sin\left(-\frac{3}{2}\pi + \theta\right) \\ &= -\cos \theta \end{aligned}$$

**Ziad's answer**

$$\begin{aligned} \sin\left(\theta - \frac{\pi}{2}\right) &= \sin\left[-\left(\frac{\pi}{2} - \theta\right)\right] \\ &= -\sin\left(\frac{\pi}{2} - \theta\right) \\ &= -(-\cos \theta) = \cos \theta \end{aligned}$$

**? Check your understanding**

Find all values of  $\theta$  where  $\theta \in ]0, \frac{\pi}{2}[$  which satisfies each of the following equalities :

A  $\sin \theta - \cos \theta = 0$

B  $\csc\left(\theta - \frac{\pi}{6}\right) = \sec \theta$

C  $2\cos\left(\frac{\pi}{2} - \theta\right) = 1$



### Exercises (4 - 4)



**First: Complete each of the following:**

- |                                       |                                       |
|---------------------------------------|---------------------------------------|
| 1 $\cos (180^\circ + \theta) =$ _____ | 2 $\tan (180^\circ - \theta) =$ _____ |
| 3 $\csc (360^\circ - \theta) =$ _____ | 4 $\sin (360^\circ + \theta) =$ _____ |
| 5 $\sin (90^\circ + \theta) =$ _____  | 6 $\cot (90^\circ - \theta) =$ _____  |
| 7 $\sec (270^\circ + \theta) =$ _____ | 8 $\cos (270^\circ - \theta) =$ _____ |

**Second: Complete each of the following with a measure of an acute angle**

- |   |  |
|---|--|
| 9 $\sin 25^\circ = \cos$ _____ $^\circ$   | 10 $\cos 67^\circ = \sin$ _____ $^\circ$ |
| 11 $\tan 42^\circ = \cot$ _____ $^\circ$  | 12 $\csc 13^\circ = \sec$ _____ $^\circ$ |
| 13 If $\cotan 2\theta = \tan\theta$ where $0^\circ < \theta < 90^\circ$ then $m(\angle \theta) =$ _____         |  |
| 14 If $\sin 5\theta = \cos 4\theta$ where $\theta$ is a positive acute angle, then $\theta =$ _____ $^\circ$    |  |
| 15 If $\sec \theta = \sec (90^\circ - \theta)$ , then $\cot \theta =$ _____                                     |  |
| 16 If $\tan 2\theta = \cot 3\theta$ where $\theta \in ]0, \frac{\pi}{2}[$ , then $m(\angle \theta) =$ _____ rad |  |
| 17 If $\cos \theta = \sin 2\theta$ where $\theta$ is a positive acute angle, then $\sin 3\theta =$ _____        |  |

**Third: Multiple choice:**

- 18 If  $\tan (180^\circ + \theta) = 1$  where  $\theta$  is the measure of the smallest positive angle, then measure of  $\theta$  equals
- |              |              |              |               |
|--------------|--------------|--------------|---------------|
| A $45^\circ$ | B $30^\circ$ | C $60^\circ$ | D $135^\circ$ |
|--------------|--------------|--------------|---------------|
- 19 If  $\cos 2\theta = \sin\theta$  where  $\theta \in ]0, \frac{\pi}{2}[$  then  $\cos 2\theta$  equals
- |                        |                 |                        |     |
|------------------------|-----------------|------------------------|-----|
| A $\frac{1}{\sqrt{2}}$ | B $\frac{1}{2}$ | C $\frac{\sqrt{3}}{2}$ | D 1 |
|------------------------|-----------------|------------------------|-----|
- 20 If  $\sin \alpha = \cos \beta$  where  $\alpha$  and  $\beta$  are two acute angles, then  $\tan (\alpha + \beta)$  equals
- |                        |     |              |             |
|------------------------|-----|--------------|-------------|
| A $\frac{1}{\sqrt{3}}$ | B 1 | C $\sqrt{3}$ | D undefined |
|------------------------|-----|--------------|-------------|
- 21 If  $\sin 2\theta = \cos 4\theta$  where  $\theta$  is a positive acute angle, then  $\tan (90^\circ - 3\theta)$  equals
- |      |                        |     |              |
|------|------------------------|-----|--------------|
| A -1 | B $\frac{1}{\sqrt{3}}$ | C 1 | D $\sqrt{3}$ |
|------|------------------------|-----|--------------|



- 22 If  $\cos(90^\circ + \theta) = \frac{1}{2}$  where  $\theta$  is the measure of the smallest positive angle, then measure of angle  $\theta$  equals

A  $150^\circ$       B  $210^\circ$       C  $240^\circ$       D  $330^\circ$

**Fourth: Answer the following question:**

- 23 Find one of the values of  $\theta$  where  $0 \leq \theta < 90^\circ$  which satisfies each of the following:

A  $\sin(3\theta + 15^\circ) = \cos(2\theta - 5^\circ)$

B  $\sec(\theta + 25^\circ) = \csc(\theta + 15^\circ)$

C  $\tan(\theta + 20^\circ) = \cot(3\theta + 30^\circ)$

D  $\cos \frac{\theta + 20^\circ}{2} = \sin \frac{\theta + 40^\circ}{2}$

- 24 Find the value of each of the following:

A  $\sin 150^\circ$

B  $\csc 225^\circ$

C  $\sec 300^\circ$

D  $\tan 780^\circ$

E  $\csc \frac{11\pi}{6}$

F  $\sin \frac{7\pi}{4}$

H  $\cot \frac{-2\pi}{3}$

I  $\cos \frac{-7\pi}{4}$

- 25 If the terminal side of the angle  $\theta$  drawn in the standard position intersects the unit circle at the point B  $(-\frac{3}{5}, \frac{4}{5})$ , then find:

A  $\sin(180^\circ + \theta)$

B  $\cos(\frac{\pi}{2} - \theta)$

C  $\tan(360^\circ - \theta)$

D  $\csc(\frac{3\pi}{2} - \theta)$

- 26 **Discover the error:** All the following answers are correct except one wrong. What is it?:

1-  $\cos \theta$  equals

A  $\sin(\theta - 270^\circ)$

B  $\sin(270^\circ - \theta)$

C  $\cos(360^\circ - \theta)$

D  $\cos(360^\circ + \theta)$

2-  $\sin \theta$  equals

A  $\cos(\frac{\pi}{2} - \theta)$

B  $\sin(\pi - \theta)$

C  $\cos(\frac{3\pi}{2} + \theta)$

D  $\sin(\frac{\pi}{2} + \theta)$

3-  $\tan \theta$  equals

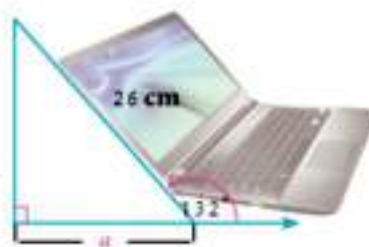
A  $\cot(90^\circ - \theta)$

B  $\cot(270^\circ - \theta)$

C  $\tan(270^\circ - \theta)$

D  $\tan(180^\circ + \theta)$

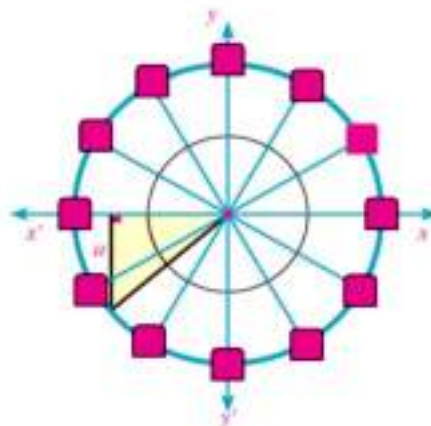
- 27 Technology:** when karim uses his lab top, the angle of inclination of his lab top on the horizontal is  $132^\circ$  as shown in the figure opposite.



- A** Draw the figure on the coordinate plane such that the angle of measure  $132^\circ$  is in the standard position, then find its related angle.
- B** Write a trigonometric function you can use to find the value of  $a$ , then find the value of  $a$  to the nearest centimetre.

**Games:** The spinner wheel is commonly spreading out in the amusement parks. It contains a number of boxes rotating in a circular arc of radius 12m.

If the measure of the common angle with the terminal side in the standard position is  $\frac{5\pi}{4}$ ,



- A** Draw the angle of measure  $\frac{5\pi}{4}$  in the standard position.
- B** Write a trigonometric function you can use to find the value of  $a$ , then find the value of  $a$  in metres to the nearest hundredth.

**28 Critical thinking:**

- A** If angle  $\theta$  is drawn in the standard position where  $\cot \theta = -1$  and  $\csc \theta = \sqrt{2}$ . Is it possible that  $m(\angle \theta) = \frac{3\pi}{4}$ ? Explain your answer.
- B** If  $\cos(\frac{3\pi}{2} - \theta) = \frac{\sqrt{3}}{2}$  and  $\sin(\frac{\pi}{2} + \theta) = \frac{1}{2}$ , find the measure of the smallest positive angle  $\theta$ .

## Graphing Trigonometric Functions



Ultrasound depend on high frequencies, differ in wave length, as used in medical photography and submarines use it as a radar works in the depths of the ocean. When these waves are represented Graphically to know the properties of the sine function and cosine function, work in group with your classmate the following:



### You will Learn

- Graph the sine function, and deduce its properties.
- Graph the cosine function, and deduce its properties.

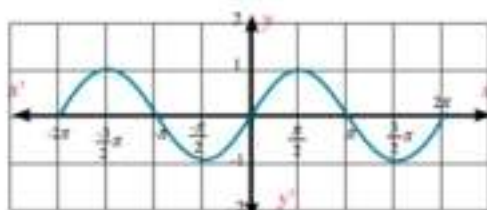
### Graphical representation of the sine function



1 Complete the following table:

$\theta$	0	$\frac{\pi}{6}$	$\frac{3\pi}{6}$	$\frac{5\pi}{6}$	$\pi$	$\frac{7\pi}{6}$	$\frac{9\pi}{6}$	$\frac{11\pi}{6}$	$2\pi$
$\sin \theta$	0	0.5							

- Draw the curve by connecting its all points.
- Construct another table uses the additive inverse of the given values in the previous table.
- Determine all points which you have got on the coordinates lattice.
- Complete drawing the curve by connecting all its points.



- Are you notice the existence of maximum or minimum values to this curve? explain your answer.

### Key - Terms

- Sine Function
- Cosine Function
- Maximum Value
- Minimum Value

### Materials

- Graphic calculator
- Computer
- Graphic programs





## Properties of the sine function

In the function  $f$  where  $f(\theta) = \sin \theta$  then:

- ★ The domain of the sine function is  $]-\infty, \infty[$ , and its range  $[-1, 1]$
- ★ The sine function is periodic with period  $2\pi$  i.e. it is possible to shift the curve in the interval  $[0, 2\pi]$  to the right or to the left  $2\pi$  unit,  $4\pi$  unit,  $6\pi$  unit, ... and so on.
- ★ The maximum value of the sine function equals 1 and takes place at the points  

$$\theta = \frac{\pi}{2} + 2n\pi \quad n \in \mathbb{Z}$$
- ★ The minimum value of the sine function equals -1 and takes place at the points  

$$\theta = \frac{3\pi}{2} + 2n\pi \quad n \in \mathbb{Z}$$

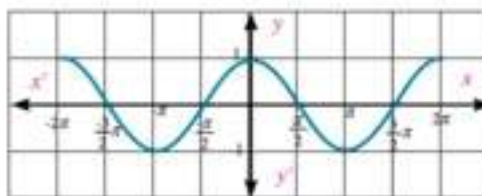
## Graphical representation of the cosine function



- 1 Complete the following table with your classmate:

$\theta$	0	$\frac{\pi}{6}$	$\frac{3\pi}{6}$	$\frac{5\pi}{6}$	$\pi$	$\frac{7\pi}{6}$	$\frac{9\pi}{6}$	$\frac{11\pi}{6}$	$2\pi$
$\cos \theta$	1	0.8							

- 2 Draw the curve by connecting all its points.
- 3 Construct another table uses the additive inverse of the given values in the previous table.
- 4 Determine all points which you have got on the coordinates lattice.
- 5 Complete drawing the curve by connecting all its points.



## Properties of the cosine function

In the function  $f$  where  $f(\theta) = \cos \theta$  then:

- ★ The domain of the cosine function is  $]-\infty, \infty[$ , and its range is  $[-1, 1]$
- ★ The cosine function is periodic with period  $2\pi$ , it is possible to shift the curve in the interval  $[0, 2\pi]$  to the right or to the left  $2\pi$  unit,  $4\pi$  unit,  $6\pi$  unit, ... and so on.

- ★ The maximum value of the cosine function equals 1 and takes place at the points  $\theta = \pm 2n\pi$   $n \in \mathbb{Z}$
- ★ The minimum value of the sine function equals -1 and takes place at the points  $\theta = \pi \pm 2n\pi$   $n \in \mathbb{Z}$

**Example**

- ① **Physics:** It is possible to the ships entering the port, if the level of water is high as a result of the movement of the ebb and tide, where the depth of water is at least 10 metres. The movement of ebb and tide in that day is given by the relation,  $S = 6 \sin (15n)^\circ + 10$  where  $n$  is the time elapsed after the mid-night in hours according to (24 hours system). How many times did the depth of water completely reach 10 metres in the port. Draw a graph representation to show how the depth of water vary with the movement of ebb and tide during the day.

**Solution**

The relation between the time ( $n$ ) in hours and the depth of water ( $s$ ) in metres

from the relation:  $S = 6 \sin (15n)^\circ + 10$

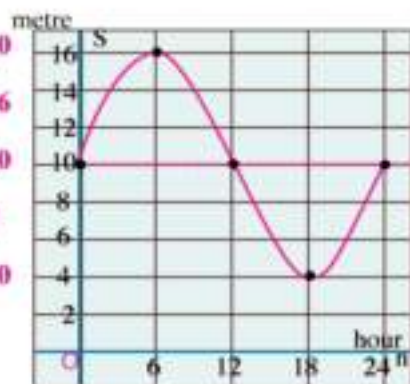
when  $n = 0$   $S = 6 \sin (15 \times 0) + 10 = 6 \sin 0 + 10 = 10$

when  $n = 6$   $S = 6 \sin (15 \times 6) + 10 = 6 \sin 90^\circ + 10 = 16$

when  $n = 12$   $S = 6 \sin (15 \times 12) + 10 = 6 \sin 180^\circ + 10 = 10$

when  $n = 18$   $S = 6 \sin (15 \times 18) + 10 = 6 \sin 270^\circ + 10 = 4$

when  $n = 24$   $S = 6 \sin (15 \times 24) + 10 = 6 \sin 360^\circ + 10 = 10$



<b>n in hours</b>	0	6	12	18	24
<b>S in metres</b>	10	16	10	4	10

From the table we get : the depth of water reaches 10 metres when  $n = 0, 12, 24$  hours

**Try to solve**

- ① In the previous example, How many hours during the day at which the ship can able to enter the port?

**Check your understanding**

- ① Draw the graph of the function  $y = 3 \sin x$  where  $x \in [0, 2\pi]$
- ② Draw the graph of the function  $y = 2 \cos x$  where  $x \in [0, 2\pi]$



**First: complete each of the following:**

- ① The range of the function  $f$  where  $f(\theta) = \sin\theta$  is \_\_\_\_\_
- ② The range of the function  $f$  where  $f(\theta) = 2 \sin\theta$  is \_\_\_\_\_
- ③ The maximum value of the function  $f$  where  $f(\theta) = 4\sin\theta$  is \_\_\_\_\_
- ④ The minimum value of the function  $f$  where  $f(\theta) = 3\cos\theta$  is \_\_\_\_\_

**Second: write the rule for each trigonometric function beside the corresponding figure to it.**

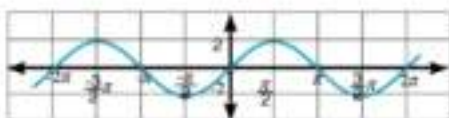


Figure (1) the rule is:

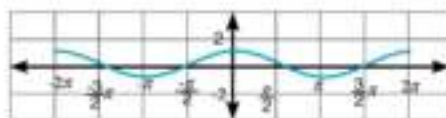


Figure (2) the rule is:

**Third: Answer the following questions:**

- ⑤ Find the maximum and minimum values, then calculate the range of each of the following functions :
  - A  $y = \sin\theta$
  - B  $y = 3 \cos\theta$
  - C  $y = \frac{3}{2} \sin\theta$
- ⑥ Use the graph calculator or program on your computer to graph each of the functions  $y = 4 \cos\theta$  and  $y = 3 \sin\theta$ , then find from the graph:
  - A The range of the function.
  - B The maximum and minimum values of the function.



## Finding the Measure of an Angle Given the Value of One of its Trigonometric Ratios



You have known that, if  $y = \sin \theta$ , then it is possible to find the value of  $y$  given the angle  $\theta$ , and when the value of  $y$  is given then, is it possible to find the value of  $\theta$ ?



If  $y = \sin \theta$  then  $\theta = \sin^{-1} y$

For example if  $\theta$  is a positive acute angle and  $y = \frac{1}{2}$ , then this relation can be written in the form  $\theta = \sin^{-1} \frac{1}{2} = 30^\circ$

### Example

- 1 Find  $m(\angle \theta)$  where  $0^\circ < \theta < 360^\circ$  which satisfies each of the following:

A  $\sin \theta = 0.6325$

B  $\cot \theta = (-1.6204)$

### Solution

A  $\therefore$  Sine of the function  $> 0$

$\therefore$  The angle lies in the first or in the second quadrant.

Use the calculator:

Start  $\rightarrow$  **SHIFT** **sin<sup>-1</sup>** **0** **.** **6** **3** **2** **5** **=** **inv**

The first quadrant:  $m(\angle \theta) = 39^\circ 14' 6''$

The Second quadrant:  $m(\angle \theta) = 180^\circ - 39^\circ 14' 6'' = 140^\circ 45' 54''$

B  $\therefore$  The co-tangent of the angle  $< 0$

$\therefore$  the angle lies in the second or in the fourth quadrant:

Use the calculator:

Start  $\rightarrow$  **SHIFT** **tan<sup>-1</sup>** **1** **.** **6** **2** **0** **4** **=** **inv**

The second quadrant:  $m(\angle \theta) = 180^\circ - 31^\circ 40' 48'' = 148^\circ 19' 12''$

The fourth quadrant:  $m(\angle \theta) = 360^\circ - 31^\circ 40' 48'' = 328^\circ 19' 12''$

Is it possible to check the answer using the calculator

### You will Learn

- Find the measure of an angle given a trigonometric function.

### Key - Terms

- Trigonometric Function

### Learning tools

- Scientific calculator

### Try to solve

- 1 Find  $m(\angle \theta)$  where  $0^\circ < \theta < 360^\circ$  which satisfies each of the following:
- A  $\cos \theta = 0.6205$       B  $\tan \theta = (-2.3615)$       C  $\csc \theta = (-2.1036)$

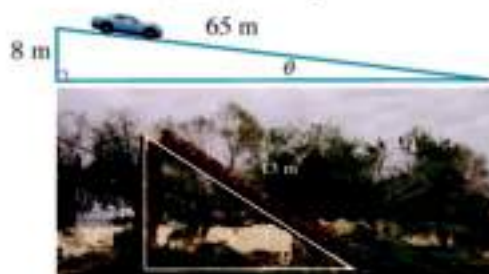
### Check your understanding

- 1 **Sports:** there is a skiing game in the theme parks, if the height of one of these games is 10 metres and its length is 16 metres as in the figure opposite. write a trigonometric function you can use to find the value of the angle  $\theta$ , then find the value of the angle in degree to the nearest thousandth.



- 2 **Cars:** Karim descends by his car down a ramp of length 65m and its height is 8 metres. If the ramp makes an angle  $\theta$  with the horizontal. find  $m(\angle \theta)$  in degree measure.

- 3 **Discover the error:** the plan of length 20 metres was broken due to wind such that as in the figure opposite, if the length of the vertical part equals 7 metres, and the inclined part of length 13 metres and  $\theta$  is the angle which the inclined part makes with the horizontal, find measure of  $\theta$ .



#### Karim's answer

$$\therefore \csc \theta = \frac{13}{7} \quad \therefore \theta = \csc^{-1} \frac{13}{7}$$

$$\therefore X(\angle \theta) = 32^\circ 34' 44''$$

#### Omar's answer

$$\therefore \sec \theta = \frac{13}{7} \quad \therefore \theta = \sec^{-1} \frac{13}{7}$$

$$\therefore X(\angle \theta) = 57^\circ 25' 16''$$

- 4 **Critical thinking:** the figure opposite represent a line segment joining between the two points A(3, 0), B(7, 3), find the measure of the angle  $\theta$  including between  $\overline{AB}$  and the x axis.





Exercises (4 - 6)



**First : Multiple choice:**

- 1 If  $\sin \theta = 0.4325$  where  $\theta$  is a positive acute angle, then  $m(\angle \theta)$  equals  
 A  $25.626^\circ$       B  $64.347^\circ$       C  $32.388^\circ$       D  $46.316^\circ$
- 2 If  $\tan \theta = 1.8$  and  $90^\circ \leq \theta \leq 360^\circ$ , then  $m(\angle \theta)$  equals  
 A  $60.945^\circ$       B  $119.055^\circ$       C  $240.945^\circ$       D  $299.055^\circ$

**Second : Answer the following questions:**

- 1 If the terminal side of angle  $\theta$  in the standard position intersects the unit circle at point B, then find each of  $\sin \theta$  and  $\cos \theta$  in the following cases:  
 A  $B\left(\frac{1}{2}, \frac{\sqrt{3}}{2}\right)$       B  $B\left(\frac{1}{\sqrt{2}}, \frac{1}{\sqrt{2}}\right)$       C  $B\left(-\frac{6}{10}, \frac{8}{10}\right)$   
 \_\_\_\_\_  
 \_\_\_\_\_
- 2 If the terminal side of angle  $\theta$  in the standard position intersects the unit circle at point B then find each of  $\sec \theta$  and  $\csc \theta$  in the following cases:  
 A  $B\left(\frac{\sqrt{2}}{2}, \frac{\sqrt{2}}{2}\right)$       B  $B\left(\frac{1}{\sqrt{5}}, \frac{2}{\sqrt{5}}\right)$       C  $B\left(-\frac{5}{13}, -\frac{12}{13}\right)$   
 \_\_\_\_\_  
 \_\_\_\_\_
- 3 If the terminal side of angle  $\theta$  in the standard position intersects the unit circle at point B, then find each of  $\tan \theta$  and  $\cot \theta$  in the following cases:  
 A  $B\left(\frac{1}{\sqrt{10}}, -\frac{3}{\sqrt{10}}\right)$       B  $B\left(\frac{3}{\sqrt{34}}, \frac{5}{\sqrt{34}}\right)$       C  $B\left(-\frac{4}{5}, -\frac{3}{5}\right)$   
 \_\_\_\_\_  
 \_\_\_\_\_
- 4 If the terminal side of angle  $\theta$  in the standard position intersects the unit circle at point B, then find  $m(\angle \theta)$  where  $0^\circ < \theta < 360^\circ$  when:  
 A  $B\left(\frac{\sqrt{3}}{2}, \frac{1}{2}\right)$       B  $B\left(-\frac{1}{\sqrt{2}}, \frac{1}{\sqrt{2}}\right)$       C  $B\left(\frac{6}{10}, \frac{-8}{10}\right)$   
 \_\_\_\_\_  
 \_\_\_\_\_



- 5 Use the degree measure to find the smallest positive angle which satisfies each of the following:

A  $\sin^{-1} 0.6$

B  $\cos^{-1} 0.436$

C  $\tan^{-1} 1.4552$

D  $\sec^{-1} (-2.2364)$

E  $\cot^{-1} 3.6218$

F  $\csc^{-1} (-1.6004)$

- 6 If  $0^\circ \leq \theta \leq 360^\circ$ , then find the measure of angle  $\theta$  in each of the following:

A  $\sin^{-1} (0.2356)$

B  $\cos^{-1} (-0.642)$

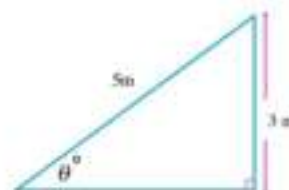
C  $\tan^{-1} (-2.1456)$

- 7 If  $\sin \theta = \frac{1}{3}$  and  $90^\circ \leq \theta \leq 180^\circ$ .

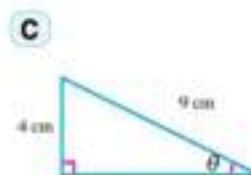
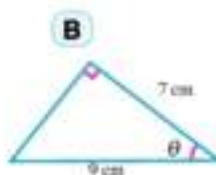
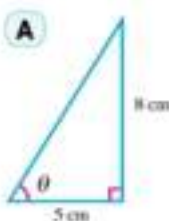
A Calculate the measure of angle  $\theta$  to the nearest second

B Find the value of  $\cos \theta$ ,  $\tan \theta$  and  $\sec \theta$ .

- 8 **Ladder:** A ladder of length 5 metres rests on a wall, if the height of the ladder from the ground is 3 metres. Find in radian the measure of the angle of inclination of the ladder to the horizontal.



- 9 Find the degree measure of angle  $\theta$  in each of the following figures:

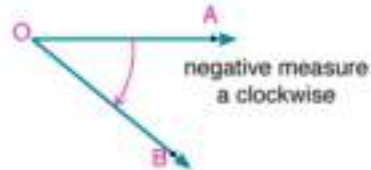
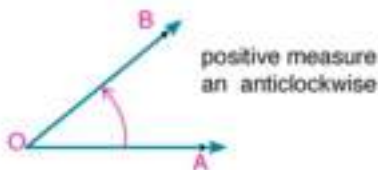


### General Exercises

For more exercises, please visit the website of Ministry of Education.

# Unit summary

- 1 The directed angle:** is an ordered pair of two rays  $(\overrightarrow{OA}, \overrightarrow{OB})$  is called the sides with a common starting point called the vertex.  $\overrightarrow{OA}$  is the initial side and  $\overrightarrow{OB}$  is the terminal side of the angle :



- 2 The standard position:** of an angle in the rectangular coordinate system, its vertex is the origin point, and its initial side is the positive part of the  $x$ -axis .
- 3 Equivalent angles:** are the angles of measures in the form  $(\theta + n \times 360^\circ)$  where  $n \in \mathbb{Z}$  have the same terminal side.
- 4 Radian angle:** is the central angle in the circle whose measure is  $1^{\text{rad}}$  subtends an arc of length equals the length of the radius of the circle .
- 5 Relation between the degree and the radian measure:** If we have an angle of degree measure equals  $x^\circ$  and its radian measure equals  $\theta^{\text{rad}}$  then:  

$$\theta^{\text{rad}} = x^\circ \times \frac{\pi}{180^\circ}, \quad x^\circ = \theta^{\text{rad}} \times \frac{180}{\pi}$$
- 6 length of the arc:** If  $\theta^{\text{rad}}$  is the central angle in the circle of radius length  $r$  subtends an arc of length  $l$  , then  $l = \theta^{\text{rad}} \times r$
- 7 The quadrantal angle:** is the angle in the standard position, its terminal side lies on one of the two axes  $x$  or  $y$ .
- 8 The unit circle:** is a circle drawn in the coordinates plane, its centre is the origin point and its radius equals one unit of length.
- 9 Trigonometric ratio:** is the ratio of lengths of two sides of the right angled triangle.
- 10 Signs of the trigonometric functions:**

## Notice that:

### First quadrant:

$$0^\circ < \theta < 90^\circ$$

all trigonometric functions are positive

### Second quadrant:

$$90^\circ < \theta < 180^\circ$$

$\sin \theta$ ,  $\csc \theta$  are positive and the other functions are negative.

### Third quadrant:

$$180^\circ < \theta < 270^\circ$$

$\tan \theta$ ,  $\cot \theta$  are positive and the other functions are negative.

### Fourth quadrant:

$$270^\circ < \theta < 360^\circ$$

$\cos \theta$ ,  $\sec \theta$  are positive and the other functions are negative.

# Unit summary

**11** The trigonometric function of angles of measures:

first:  $(180^\circ - \theta)$

$$\begin{aligned}\sin(180^\circ - \theta) &= \sin \theta, \quad \csc(180^\circ - \theta) = \csc \theta \\ \cos(180^\circ - \theta) &= -\cos \theta, \quad \sec(180^\circ - \theta) = -\sec \theta \\ \tan(180^\circ - \theta) &= -\cot \theta, \quad \cot(180^\circ - \theta) = -\cot \theta\end{aligned}$$

second:  $(180^\circ + \theta)$

$$\begin{aligned}\sin(180^\circ + \theta) &= -\sin \theta, \quad \csc(180^\circ + \theta) = -\csc \theta \\ \cos(180^\circ + \theta) &= -\cos \theta, \quad \sec(180^\circ + \theta) = -\sec \theta \\ \tan(180^\circ + \theta) &= \tan \theta, \quad \cot(180^\circ + \theta) = \cot \theta\end{aligned}$$

third:  $(360^\circ - \theta)$

$$\begin{aligned}\sin(360^\circ - \theta) &= -\sin \theta, \quad \csc(360^\circ - \theta) = -\csc \theta \\ \cos(360^\circ - \theta) &= \cos \theta, \quad \sec(360^\circ - \theta) = \sec \theta \\ \tan(360^\circ - \theta) &= -\tan \theta, \quad \cot(360^\circ - \theta) = -\cot \theta\end{aligned}$$

fourth:  $(90^\circ - \theta)$

$$\begin{aligned}\sin(90^\circ - \theta) &= \cos \theta, \quad \csc(90^\circ - \theta) = \sec \theta \\ \cos(90^\circ - \theta) &= \sin \theta, \quad \sec(90^\circ - \theta) = \csc \theta \\ \tan(90^\circ - \theta) &= \cot \theta, \quad \cot(90^\circ - \theta) = \tan \theta\end{aligned}$$

fifth:  $(90^\circ + \theta)$

$$\begin{aligned}\sin(90^\circ + \theta) &= \cos \theta, \quad \csc(90^\circ + \theta) = \sec \theta \\ \cos(90^\circ + \theta) &= -\sin \theta, \quad \sec(90^\circ + \theta) = -\csc \theta \\ \tan(90^\circ + \theta) &= -\cot \theta, \quad \cot(90^\circ + \theta) = -\tan \theta\end{aligned}$$

sixth:  $(270^\circ - \theta)$

$$\begin{aligned}\sin(270^\circ - \theta) &= -\cos \theta, \quad \csc(270^\circ - \theta) = -\sec \theta \\ \cos(270^\circ - \theta) &= -\sin \theta, \quad \sec(270^\circ - \theta) = -\csc \theta \\ \tan(270^\circ - \theta) &= \cot \theta, \quad \cot(270^\circ - \theta) = \tan \theta\end{aligned}$$

seventh:  $(270^\circ + \theta)$

$$\begin{aligned}\sin(270^\circ + \theta) &= -\cos \theta, \quad \csc(270^\circ + \theta) = -\sec \theta \\ \cos(270^\circ + \theta) &= \sin \theta, \quad \sec(270^\circ + \theta) = \csc \theta \\ \tan(270^\circ + \theta) &= -\cot \theta, \quad \cot(270^\circ + \theta) = -\tan \theta\end{aligned}$$

**12** Properties of each of the sine and cosine functions

Property	The sine function $f(\theta) = \sin \theta$	the cosine function $f(\theta) = \cos \theta$
The domain and the range	the domain is $[-\infty, \infty]$ , the range is $[-1, 1]$	the domain is $[-\infty, \infty]$ , the range is $[-1, 1]$
The maximum value	equals 1 at $x = \frac{\pi}{2} + 2n\pi, n \in \mathbb{Z}$	equals 1 at $x = \pm 2n\pi, n \in \mathbb{Z}$
The minimum value	equals -1 at $x = \frac{3\pi}{2} + 2n\pi, n \in \mathbb{Z}$	equals -1 at $x = \pi \pm n\pi, n \in \mathbb{Z}$

**13** If the terminal side of the angle  $\theta$  drawn in the standard position intersects the unit circle at the point  $B(x, y)$  then  $x = \cos \theta$ ,  $y = \sin \theta$  and are known the trigonometric functions.

## @ Enrichment Information

Please visit the following links.





## Test 1

## (Algebra and trigonometry)

**Question 1 : Choose the correct answer a, b, c or d.**

- 1 If L and M are the two roots of the equation  $x^2 - 7x + 3 = 0$ , then  $L^2 + M^2$ 
  - a 7
  - b 3
  - c 58
  - d 79
- 2 If  $\sin \theta = -1$ , and  $\cos \theta = \text{zero}$ , then  $\theta$  equals \_\_\_\_\_
  - a  $\frac{\pi}{2}$
  - b  $\pi$
  - c  $\frac{3\pi}{2}$
  - d  $2\pi$
- 3 The quadratic equation whose roots are:  $2 - 3i$ ,  $2 + 3i$  is
  - a  $x^2 + 4x + 13 = 0$
  - b  $x^2 - 4x + 13 = 0$
  - c  $x^2 + 4x - 13 = 0$
  - d  $x^2 - 4x - 13 = 0$
- 4 If one of the two roots of the equation:  $x^2 - (m + 2)x + 3 = 0$  is an additive inverse of the other root, then m equals
  - a 3
  - b 2
  - c -2
  - d -3

**Question 2 : Complete**

- 1 The function f : where  $f(x) = -(x - 1)(x + 2)$  is positive in the interval \_\_\_\_\_
- 2 The angle whose measure is 930 is located at the \_\_\_\_\_ quadrant
- 3 If  $\cos \theta = \frac{1}{2}$  and  $\sin \theta = -\frac{\sqrt{3}}{2}$ , then  $\theta$  equals \_\_\_\_\_
- 4 The quadratic equation whose two roots are twice the two roots of the equation  $2x^2 - 8x + 5 = 0$  is \_\_\_\_\_

**Question 3**

- a Put the number  $\frac{2 - 3i}{3 + 2i}$  in the form of a complex number where  $i^2 = -1$ .
- b If  $4 \sin A - 3 = 0$ , find  $m(\angle A)$  where  $A \in ]0, \frac{\pi}{2}[$

**Question 4**

- a If  $f: \mathbb{R} \longrightarrow \mathbb{R}$  where  $f(x) = -x^2 + 8x - 15$ 

**first:** Graph the function curve in the interval  $[1, 7]$

**second:** Determine the sign of the function.
- b If  $x = 3 + 2i$  and  $y = \frac{4 - 2i}{1 - i}$ , then find  $x + y$  in the form of a complex number.

**Question 5**

- a Find the solution set of the inequality  $x^2 + 3x - 4 \leq 0$
- b If  $\tan B = \frac{3}{4}$  where  $180^\circ < B < 270^\circ$ , then find the value of:  
 $\cos(360^\circ - B) - \cos(90^\circ - B)$

# General Tests

## Test 2

## (Algebra and trigonometry)

### Question 1 : Complete:

- ① The simplest form of the imaginary number  $i^{43} =$  \_\_\_\_\_
- ② If the two roots of the equation  $x^2 - 6x + L = 0$  are real and equal, then  $L =$  \_\_\_\_\_
- ③ If  $0^\circ < \theta < 90^\circ$  and  $\sin 2\theta = \cos 3\theta$ , then  $m(\angle \theta) =$  \_\_\_\_\_
- ④ The range of function  $f$  where  $f(\theta) = \frac{3}{2}\sin \theta$  is \_\_\_\_\_

### Question 2 : Choose the correct answer a, b, c or d.

- ① The equation:  $x^2(x-1)(x+1) = 0$  is a \_\_\_\_\_ degree equation:  
**a** first                      **b** second                      **c** third                      **d** fourth
- ② If the two roots of the equation  $x^2 + 3x - m = 0$  are real different, then  $m$  equals:  
**a** 1                      **b** 2                      **c** 3                      **d** 4
- ③ If the sum of measures of the angles of a regular polygon equals  $180^\circ (n-2)$  where  $n$  is the number of sides, then the measure of the angle of a regular octagon by the radian measure equals: \_\_\_\_\_  
**a**  $\frac{\pi}{3}$                       **b**  $\frac{\pi}{2}$                       **c**  $\frac{3\pi}{4}$                       **d**  $\frac{2\pi}{3}$
- ④ If  $2\cos \theta = \sqrt{3}$  and  $\pi < \theta < \frac{3\pi}{2}$ , then  $m(\angle \theta)$  equals \_\_\_\_\_  
**a**  $\frac{\pi}{3}$                       **b**  $\frac{6\pi}{7}$                       **c**  $\frac{4\pi}{3}$                       **d**  $\frac{7\pi}{6}$

### Question 3 :

- A** Find the value of  $k$  which makes one root of the two roots of the equation:  $4kx^2 + 7x + k^2 + 4 = 0$  is a multiplicative inverse of the other root.
- B** If  $\sin \theta = \sin 750^\circ \cos 300^\circ + \sin(-60^\circ) \cot 120^\circ$  where  $0^\circ < \theta < 360^\circ$ . Find  $m(\angle \theta)$ .

### Question 4 :

- A First:** Find the two values of  $a, b$  which satisfy the equation :  $12 + 3ai = 4b - 27i$   
**Second:** Find the solution set of the inequality:  $x(x+1) - 2 \leq 0$  in  $\mathbb{R}$
- B** A central angle of measure  $\theta$  inscribed in a circle of a radius length 18 cm and subtends an arc of length 26 cm, find  $\theta$  in degree measure.

### Question 5 :

- A** If the sum  $S$  of the consecutive integers  $(1 + 2 + 3 + \dots + n)$ , where  $n$  is the number of integers is given by the relation  $s = \frac{n}{2}(1+n)$ , how many consecutive integers starting from number 1 to be summed 210 are there?
- B** If  $\sin x = \frac{4}{5}$  where  $90^\circ < x < 180^\circ$ . Find  $\sin(180^\circ - x) + \tan(360^\circ - x) + 2 \sin(270^\circ - x)$ .

### Test 3

**(Geometry)**

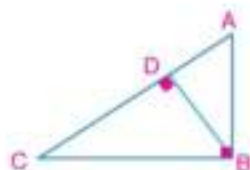
**Question 1: Complete**

- 1 The two polygons that are similar to a third are \_\_\_\_\_
- 2 In the figure opposite:

**First:**  $(AB)^2 = AD \times \underline{\hspace{1cm}}$  and  $(CB)^2 = CA \times \underline{\hspace{1cm}}$

Second:  $DA \times DC =$  \_\_\_\_\_

Third:  $AB \times BC = \underline{\hspace{1cm}} \times \underline{\hspace{1cm}}$



**Question 2: choose the correct answer a, b, c or d**

- ① Two similar rectangles, the length of the first is 5 cm, the ratio between the perimeter of the first to the perimeter of the second equals \_\_\_\_\_ :

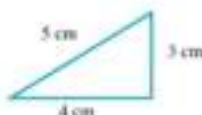
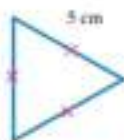
**A** 1:5

**B** 1:3

**B** 1:2

**D** 2 : 1

- 2** Which two triangles of the following are similar?



(4)

430

(3)

491

**A** (1), (4)

**B** (2), (4)

**C** (1), (3)

**D** (3), (4)

- 3 If the ratio between the perimeters of two similar triangles is 1:4, then the ratio between their two surface areas equals \_\_\_\_\_

**A** 1:2

**B** 1:4

**C** 1:8

**D** 1:16

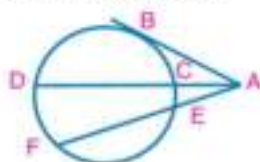
- 4 In the figure opposite: All mathematical expressions are correct except one expression:

**A**  $(AB)^2 = AC \times AD$

**B**  $(AB)^2 = AE \times AF$

**C**  $AC \times AD = AE \times AF$

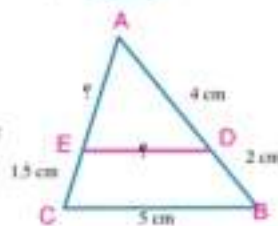
**D**  $AC \times CD = AE \times EF$



**Question 3:**

- A** In the figure opposite:  $\triangle ADE \sim \triangle ABC$  prove that:  $\overline{DE} \parallel \overline{BC}$

If :  $AD = 4$  cm,  $DB = 2$  cm,  $EC = 1.5$  cm,  $BC = 5$  cm. Find the length of  $\overline{AE}$  and  $\overline{DE}$



- B** ABC is a triangle,  $D \in \overline{BC}$  where  $BD = 5$  cm,  $DC = 3$  cm and  $E \in \overline{AC}$  where  $AE = 2$  cm,  $CE = 4$  cm. Prove that  $\triangle DEC \sim \triangle ABC$ , then find the ratio between their two surface areas



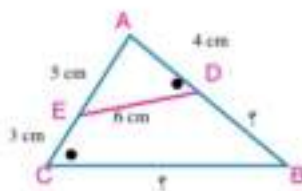
# General Tests

## Question 4:

- A** In the figure opposite:  $m(\angle ADE) = m(\angle C)$

$AD = 4$  cm,  $AE = 5$  cm,  $DE = 6$  cm and  $EC = 3$  cm

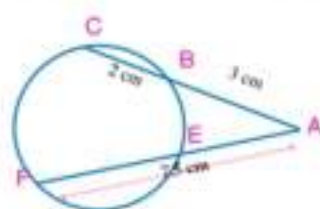
Find the length of:  $\overline{DB}$  and  $\overline{BC}$



- B**  $\overline{CB} \cap \overline{FE} = \{A\}$

$AB = 3$  cm,  $BC = 2$  cm,  $AF = 7.5$  cm

Find the length of  $\overline{EF}$



## Question 5 :

- A** AD is a median in the triangle ABC,  $\angle ADB$  is bisected by a bisector to cut  $\overline{AB}$  at E,  $\angle ABC$  is bisected by a bisector to cut  $\overline{AC}$  at F and  $\overline{EF}$  is drawn. Prove that  $\overline{EF} \parallel \overline{BC}$

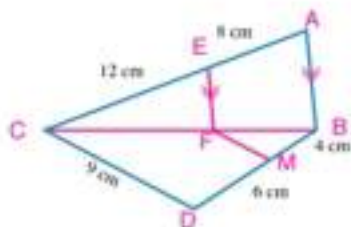
- B** in the figure opposite:

$\overline{AB} \parallel \overline{EF}$ ,  $AE = 8$  cm,  $CE = 12$  cm,  $CF = 9$  cm,

$BM = 4$  cm and  $DM = 6$  cm

First: find the length of  $\overline{BF}$

Second: prove that :  $\overline{FM} \parallel \overline{CD}$

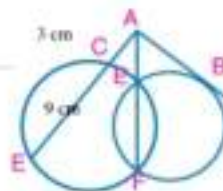
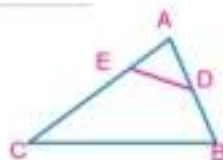


## Test 4

## (Geometry)

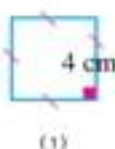
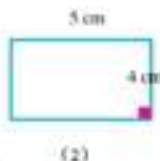
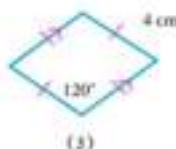
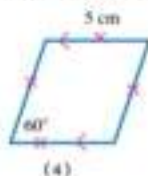
### Question 1: complete

- Any two regular polygons that have the same number of sides are \_\_\_\_\_
- In the figure opposite: If  $\triangle ADE \sim \triangle ACB$   
then  $m(\angle ADE) = m(\angle \text{_____})$
- If the two straight lines including the two chords  $\overline{DE}$ ,  $\overline{XY}$   
intersect at point N, then:  $ND \cdot NE = \text{_____}$
- In the figure opposite: If  $AC = 3$  cm and  $CE = 9$  cm then  $AB = \text{_____}$



### Question 2 : Choose the correct answer a, b, c or d.

- 1** Which two polygons of the following are similar?



- A** Polygons (1) , (2)  
**C** Polygons (3) , (4)

- B** Polygons (1) , (3)  
**D** Polygons (2) , (4)

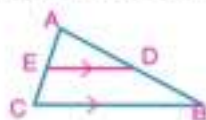
# General Tests

- 2 If the ratio between the surface areas of two similar polygons is 16:25, then the ratio between the lengths of the two corresponding sides in the two polygons equals

A 2 : 5      B 4 : 5      C 16 : 25      D 16 : 41

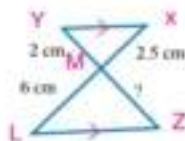
- 3 In the figure opposite: All the following mathematical expressions are correct except :

A  $\frac{AD}{DB} = \frac{AE}{EC}$       B  $\frac{AD}{DB} = \frac{DE}{BC}$   
 C  $\frac{AD}{AB} = \frac{AE}{AC}$       D  $\frac{AB}{BD} = \frac{AC}{EC}$



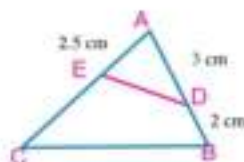
- 4 In the figure opposite : length of  $\overrightarrow{MZ}$  equals :

A 3.6 cm      B 4 cm      C 4.2 cm      D 4.8 cm



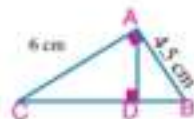
## Question 3:

- A In the figure opposite:  $\triangle ABC \sim \triangle AED$   
 Prove that BCED is a cyclic quadrilateral If  $AD = 3\text{cm}$ ,  $BD = 2\text{cm}$ , and  $AE = 2.5\text{cm}$ . Find the length of EC.
- B ABCD is a cyclic quadrilateral whose two diagonals intersected at E.  $\overrightarrow{EF} \parallel \overrightarrow{CB}$  is drawn to intersect  $\overrightarrow{AB}$  at F  $\overrightarrow{EM} \parallel \overrightarrow{CD}$ ,  $\overrightarrow{CD}$  is drawn to intersect AD at M Prove that.  $\overrightarrow{FM} \parallel \overrightarrow{BD}$ .



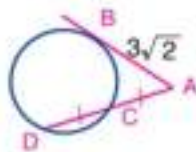
## Question 4 :

- A In the figure opposite:  $m(\angle BAC) = 90^\circ$ ,  $\overline{AD} = \overline{BC}$ ,  $AB = 4.5\text{ cm}$ , and  $AC = 6\text{ cm}$ . Find the length of  $\overline{BD}$ ,  $\overline{DC}$  and  $\overline{AD}$
- B ABCD is a cyclic quadrilateral in which  $BC = 27\text{cm}$ ,  $AB = 12\text{cm}$ ,  $AD = 8\text{cm}$ ,  $DC = 12\text{cm}$  and  $AC = 18\text{ cm}$ . Prove that  $\triangle BAC \sim \triangle ADC$  and find the ratio between their two surface areas



## Question 5:

- A In the figure opposite:  $\overline{AB}$  is a tangent to a circle, C is a midpoint on  $\overline{AD}$  and  $AB = 3\sqrt{2}$  find the length of  $\overline{AC}$
- B ABC is a triangle in which  $AB = 8\text{ cm}$ ,  $AC = 12\text{ cm}$ ,  $BC = 15\text{ cm}$ ,  $\overline{AD}$  bisects  $\angle A$  and intersects  $\overline{BC}$  at D,  $\overline{DE} \parallel \overline{BA}$  is drawn to intersect  $\overline{AC}$  at E. Find the length of  $\overline{BD}$ ,  $\overline{CE}$



المواصفات الفنية

مقاس الكتاب	٨٢x٥٧ سم
ألوان الكتاب	٤ لون
ألوان الغلاف	٤ لون
نوعية ورق الغلاف و وزنه	٢٠٠ جم
نوعية ورق المتن ووزنه	٨٠ جم
عدد الصفحات بالغلاف	١٧٦ صفحة
رقم الكتاب	١٥٣٣/١٠/١٥/١١/١/٢١



مطبعة أكتوبر الهندسية  
*October Engineering Press*